



How to Master Skills for the

TOEFL

Basic

Arthur H. Milch | Denise McCormack | E2K Chuyển ngữ phần chú giải Lê Huy Lâm

GUYÊN CLIỆU

NTV

Công ty TNHH Nhân Trí Việt



NHÀ XUẤT BẢN TỔNG HỢP THÀNH PHỐ HỒ CHÍ MINH



Authors

Arthur H. Milch Ed.M in TESOL, The College of New Jersey, Ewing, NJ

Denise McCormack Ed.M in TESOL, The College of New Jersey, Ewing, NJ

Contributing Writer

Jenny Chung BA in Education, Korea University, Seoul

MA in Psychology, City University of New York, New York, NY

Director of Product Development

E2K A creative group that provides quality contents and educational services in English for ESL and EFL students

How to Master Skills for the

TOEFL® iBT Writing Basic

Copyright @ 2007-2017 by Darakwon, Inc.

Vietnam's edition @ 2018 by Nhan Tri Viet Co., Ltd.

This edition is published in Vietnam under a license Agreement between Darakwon Inc., and Nhan Tri Viet Co., Ltd. through Imprima Korea Agency.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the copyright owners.

How to Master Skills for the

TOEFLE Priting

Basic

Arthur H. Milch | Denise McCormack | E2K

Chuyển ngữ phần chú giải LÊ HUY LÂM

SÁCH TÁI BẢN

Công ty TNHH
Nhân Trí Việt



Contents

Introductio	6		
How to Use	How to Use This Book		
PART 1	Essential Grammar for Writing		
Unit 1	Basic Sentence Structure / Gerunds / Infinitives	14	
Unit 2	Participles / Voice	22	
Unit 3	Parallelism / Comparison	30	
Unit 4	Noun Clauses / Adjective Clauses	38	
Unit 5	Adverb Clauses / Conditionals	46	
PART 2	Essential TOEFL® Collocations		
Unit 6	School & Education	56	
Unit 7	Family & Society	64	
Unit 8	Economy & Business	72	
Unit 9	Living & Thinking	80	
Unit 10	Culture & Leisure	88	
Unit 11	Health & Environment	96	
Unit 12	Science & Technology	104	
PART 3	Essential Patterns & Expressions		
Unit 13	Agree / Disagree I	114	
Unit 14	Agree / Disagree II	124	
Unit 15	Preference I	134	
Unit 16	Preference II	144	
PART 4	Introducing iBT Writing		
Unit 17	Brainstorming & Outlining	156	
	Note Taking	174	
Unit 19	Paraphrasing & Summarizing	190	
Actual Tes	te	203	
Answer Bo		217	
Answer Bo	JUK	211	

Introduction

A. Information on the TOEFL® iBT

The Format of the TOEFL® iBT

Section	Number of Questions	Timing	Score
Reading	• 3~5 Passages – approximately 700 words each – 12~14 questions per passage	60~100 min.	30 points
Listening	• 2-3 Conversations - 12-25 exchanges each (3 min.) - 5 questions per conversation • 4-6 Lectures - 500-800 words each (3-5 min.) - 6 questions per lecture	60~90 min.	30 points
BREAK		10 min.	
Speaking	• 2 Independent Tasks (preparation: 15 sec. / response: 45 sec.) • 1 personal experience • 1 personal choice/opinion • 2 Integrated Tasks: Read-Listen-Speak (preparation: 30 sec. / response: 60 sec.) • 1 campus situation topic — reading: 75~100 words (45 sec.) — conversation: 150~180 words (60~80 sec.) • 1 academic course topic — reading: 75~100 words (45 sec.) — lecture: 150~220 words (60~90 sec.) • 2 Integrated Tasks: Listen-Speak (preparation: 20 sec. / response: 60 sec.)	20 min.	30 points
	1 campus situation topic - conversation: 180~220 words (60~90 sec.) 1 academic course topic - lecture: 230~280 words (90~120 sec.) 1 Integrated Task: Read-Listen-Write (20 min.)		
Writing	- reading: 230–300 words (3 min.) -lecture: 230–300 words (2 min.) - a summary of 150–225 words	50 min.	30 points
	1 Independent Task (30 min.) – a minimum 300-word essay		

B. Information on the Writing Section

The Writing section of the TOEFL® iBT measures test takers' ability to use writing to communicate in an academic environment. This section has two writing tasks. For the first writing task, you will read a passage and listen to a lecture and then answer a question based on what you have read and heard. For the second writing task, you will answer a question based on your own knowledge and experience.

1. Types of Writing Tasks

- (1) Integrated Writing Task
 - Read -You will read a short text of about 230~300 words on an academic topic for 3 minutes. You may take notes on the reading passage.
 - Listen After reading the text, you will listen to a lecture discussing the same topic from a different perspective for about 2 minutes. You may take notes on the lecture.
 - Write You will have 20 minutes to write a 150- to 225-word summary in response to the following kinds of questions:

Casting Doubt

- _ Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they cast doubt on specific points made in the reading passage.
- _ Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they challenge specific claims/arguments made in the reading passage.
- cf. This question type accounts for almost all the questions that have been asked on the TOEFL® iBT so far.

Problem-Solution

_ Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to specifically explain how they answer the problems raised in the reading passage.

(2) Independent Writing Task

You will have 30 minutes to write an essay of at least 300 words in response to the following kinds of questions:

Agree / Disagree

- _ Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? [A sentence or sentences that present an issue] Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.
- cf. This question type accounts for almost all the essay topics that have been asked on the TOEFL® iBT so far.

Preference

- _ Some people say X. Others believe Y. Which opinion do you agree with? Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.
- _ Some people do X. Other people do Y. Which do you think is better? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

2. Writing Scoring Rubrics

(1) Integrated Task (Question 1)

Your response to the Integrated Task will be scored according to these criteria:

Score	Task Description
5	A response at this level is a well-organized summary of the lecture in connection with the reading. The response includes important points made in the lecture and appropriately explains how they are related to important points made in the reading. It shows appropriate language structure and usage, with only occasional minor error which do not interfere with conveying information and connections.
4	A response at this level contains most of the important points from the lecture and the reading and is generally good in relating the information from the lecture to that from the reading. But it may omit some points or explain them imprecisely. It may also show noticeable minor language errors or an occasional lack of clarity.
3	A response at this level includes some important information from the lecture and connects it with the relevant information from the reading. But it may omit one key point made in the lecture and shows only limited understanding of the information. Some content or connections between ideas may be incomplete or incorrect; errors in grammar or usage make some sentences unclear.
2	A response at this level does not include sufficient relevant information from the lecture and the reading and is not successful in relating the information from the lecture to that from the reading. It is characterized by language errors or expressions that make it difficult for the reader to understand key ideas or to follow connections among ideas.
1	A response at this level contains little or no important points from the lecture and fails to relate information from the lecture and the reading. It is poorly written and contains so many language errors that it is difficult to understand it.
0	A response at this level only copies sentences from the reading, is not related to the topic, is written in a language other than English, or is blank.

(2) Independent Task (Question 2)

Your essay for the Independent Task will be scored according to these criteria:

Score	Task Description
5	An essay at this level effectively responds to the topic and task by clearly stating an opinion and is easy to understand. It is well organized and shows unity, progression, and coherence. It is well developed with clearly appropriate examples, reasons, and/or details, and it displays a good command of language, including a variety of sentence structures and well-suited choices of words and idioms to express ideas.
4	An essay at this level responds to the topic and task well, but some points may not be fully supported. It is generally well organized and shows unity, progression, and coherence with only occasional redundancy or lack of clarity. It also is generally well developed with appropriate examples, reasons, and/or details, and it demonstrates a good use of language, including various sentence structures and range of vocabular with occasional language errors that do not obscure the meaning.
3	An essay at this level responds to the topic and task on a basic level with somewhat developed examples, reasons, and/or details. It shows unity, progression, and coherence in spite of occasional, unclear connections among ideas. It is also characterized by correct but limited use of grammar and vocabulary, including error in sentence formation and word choice that may make some sentences unclear or difficult to understand.
2	An essay at this level displays limited development in response to the topic and task, with inappropriate or insufficient supporting details. It has poor organization or connections among ideas and is marked by obviously inappropriate word choice or word forms and an accumulation of errors in grammar and/or usage.
1	An essay at this level responds to the task confusingly. It lacks any organization and development. It contains little or no detail, or details that are not related to the task, and it shows serious and frequent errors in grammar and usage.
0	An essay at this level only contains words from the topic, is not related to the topic, is written in a language other than English, or is blank.

How to Use This Book

How to Master Skills for the TOEFL® iBT Writing Basic is designed to be used either as a textbook for a TOEFL® iBT writing preparation course or as a tool for individual learners who are preparing for the TOEFL® test on their own. With a total of 19 units, this book is organized to prepare you for the test with a comprehensive understanding of the test and thorough practice of essential expressions and skills to address the writing tasks on the TOEFL® iBT. The book is comprised of four parts, and each part provides a step-by-step program that can enhance your writing ability. At the back of the book are two actual tests of the Writing section of the TOEFL® iBT.

Essential Grammar, Collocations, or Patterns & Expressions

This part presents essential grammar or lexical items you need to know in order to respond effectively to the writing tasks on the TOEFL® iBT. Essential grammar for writing is dealt with in units 1 to 5; essential TOEFL® collocations in units 6 to 12; and essential patterns and expressions in units 13 to 16.



Oheck-Up

The purpose of this section is to ensure that you understand essential grammar points, collocations, or patterns and expressions presented at the beginning of each unit. You will be given a chance to confirm your understanding before starting on the further exercises.



6 Writing Practice

This section allows you to practice writing various English sentences while using the grammar points, collocations, or patterns and expressions you have learned. In this practice section, there are sentence completion, sentence formation, and translation exercises.

Writing Practice:

E. Transparts to Indusing this England by pulling the group words and phrases in the right order.

The experimental services and the services are as the services and the services are as the services are

"M is bought the two street to a 1 street along to one of this composition on patients for

The second secon

The second section is the second second

the last case of the fee has been a single case.

consist of modely for an art Marrier Strandor a page of plantary at

To the post of the law of the fit is the fig title the fit is the ear on the ten-

the part of the first part of the part of

Writing Practice

Compares the following to filling in the blanks with the appropriate colors allows:

10: 200 proof or to the discrete filling in the proof to the color of the colors of the color of the c

I have not true and the not to be able to the new days and to the second to the second

The large and the large are at the problem of the problem of the second discussion and

Tang aspectable, to our per tensor of in the last the in-

Fig. spin it is not you to be not a not not be to a not to the content of the con

The desired to the second of t

 The risks pay well this is the later for the risk of the risk of the conlaborate weight shadows to
 Almost a weight of tapon

The 1 storm of to do it do it find not be to its

The res of this part and the figure as the first part and the part and the part and the first part and the first part and the part and

Writing Challenge

Exercises in this section encourage you to make full sentences on your own, to provide some sentences to complete the given contexts, and to state your own theses with some reasons in response to the given prompts. These writing exercises will help you express your ideas in English fluently and accurately.



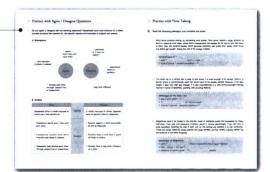
3 Essential iBT Writing Skills

This component appears at the beginnings of units 17 to 19. It introduces each of several helpful writing skills for the TOEFL® iBT by showing how to brainstorm, outline, take notes, paraphrase, and summarize step by step. This presentation will help you understand each skill in a simple, clear way.



Practice with Essential iBT Skills

This section will help you to practice brainstorming, outlining, note taking, paraphrasing, and summarizing—all skills that were introduced in the former section. You will experience enough exercises to practice those skills in response to the essay prompts and passages, which are very similar to those on the real TOEFL® IBT.



Actual Tests

This part offers two full practice tests that are modeled on the Writing section of the TOEFL® iBT. These tests will familiarize you with the actual test format of the TOEFL® iBT.



PART

Essential Grammar for Writing

Grammar is what gives sense to language. It is used to increase the range of language choices when you write. Understanding and having knowledge of the uses of grammar will help you write more effectively. In this part, you will study basic grammar points and practice a lot of sentence writing skills to make well-formed English sentences. These drills are the very first step to writing your own essays.

Unit 1 Basic Sentence Structure / Gerunds / Infinitives

Cấu trúc câu cơ bản / Danh động từ / Động từ nguyên mẫu

Unit 2 Participles / Voice

Phân từ / Thể

• Unit 3 Parallelism / Comparison

Cấu trúc đồng dạng / So sánh

Unit 4 Noun Clauses / Adjective Clauses

Mênh để danh từ / Mênh để tính từ

• Unit 5 Adverb Clauses / Conditionals

Mệnh để trạng từ / Câu điều kiện

Basic Sentence Structure / Gerunds / Infinitives

Cấu trúc câu cơ bản / Danh động từ / Động từ nguyên mẫu

A Basic Sentence Structure

Sentence

Câu là đơn vị ngữ pháp lớn nhất, thường bao gồm một chủ ngữ (subject), một động từ được chia (finite verb) và diễn tả một ý tưởng hoàn chỉnh.

- Jeremy wants to major in chemistry in college. (Câu có ý tưởng hoàn chính)
- $\underbrace{ \text{Chemistry is}_{\text{S}} \text{ his favorite subject. } (\text{Câu có \'y tưởng hoàn chỉnh}) }_{\text{S}}$
- * Câu không hoàn chỉnh (Fragment)
- Wants to major in chemistry. (Câu thiếu chủ ngữ)
- Jeremy to major in chemistry. (Câu thiếu động từ)
- Because Jeremy likes chemistry. (Câu thiếu mệnh để chính)
 - → Because Jeremy likes chemistry, he wants to major in that subject. (Câu phức)

Sentence Patterns

- 1) Pattern 1 Chủ ngữ (Subject) + Động từ (Verb)
- My grandparents <u>live</u> in a small town.
- This meeting will last for at least three hours.
 S
- 2) Pattern 2 Chủ ngữ (Subject) + Động từ (Verb) + Bổ ngữ (Complement)
- Parents are the best teachers for their children.
- Computers have become very useful tools in modern life.
 S
 V
 C
- 3) Pattern 3 Chủ ngữ (Subject) + Động từ (Verb) + Túc từ (Object)
- Students should follow school rules .
- Some people prefer to get up early in the morning.
 S
 V
 O
- Pattern 4 Chủ ngữ (Subject) + Động từ (Verb) + Túc từ giản tiếp (Indirect Object) + Túc từ trực tếp (Direct Object)

- We should ask ourselves what the most important thing in our lives is .
- 5) Pattern 5 Chủ ngữ (Subject) + Động từ (Verb) + Túc từ (Object) + Bổ ngữ (Complement)
- Good friends make school life happy
- Watching fun movies allows me to take a break from my busy routine.

B Gerunds

- As a Subject
 - 1 Taking a walk is a very good exercise.
 - @ Eating meals regularly is important for your health.
- As a Complement
 - One of my favorite activities is surfing the Internet.
 - Teamwork is communicating with others.
- As an Object
 - 1 enjoy watching movies in my spare time.
 - My brother is proud of having many good friends.

(Infinitives

- Like a Noun
 - 10 To read books in English is very important for improving your vocabulary. (Chủ ngữ)
 - → It is very important to read books in English to improve your vocabulary. (Chủ ngữ giả-chủ ngữ thật)
 - 1 The main purpose of traveling is to experience new things. (Bo ngu)
 - People often like to criticize others' behavior. (Túc từ)
- Like an Adjective
 - People's behavior has much to do with what clothes they wear.
 - I always need a book to read on the subway.
- C Like an Adverb
 - In order to earn more money in the future, people try to get accepted to good schools.
 - No one is intelligent enough to make good decisions without others' advice.

Check-Up

Mark the subject, verb, object, and complement in each sentence as shown in the example.

Scientific technologies have made our lives convenient

- 1 Laughter improves health by lowering stress hormones.
- 2 Friends are one of the most important influences on young adults.
- 3 Our city should build a new library for our children.
- 4 I found it helpful to listen to others' advice when making an important decision.
- 5 Every morning, I exercise.
- 6 A happy life requires an optimistic attitude.
- 7 Some people change their jobs very frequently.
- 8 I was a child when I lived in a different country.
- 9 Inexperienced workers earn less money than experienced ones.
- 10 I could almost not breathe because of the stuffy atmosphere.
- 11 Many immigrants have a hard time adjusting to a new culture.
- 12 Our community offers students various after-school activities.
- 13 Modern apartment buildings are too expensive in my town.
- 14 Universities give students many opportunities to learn a variety of subjects.

B	Correct the errors in the following sentences. Some sentences have no errors.			
	1	People should ask the advice of others before move to other cities.		
	2	It is important for students to studying history and literature.		
	3	Some people prefer working for a large company to work for a small company.		
	4	People have different ways spending their time.		
	5	Children love to watch television, but they dislike to watch informative programs.		
	6	Working for others means that you should follow their rules.		
	7	In order to live a healthy life, you need exercising regularly.		
	8	Experts recommend to take some time to laugh when you get stressed out.		
	9	Traveling gives us the opportunity of meeting new people.		
	10	Learning how to spend money is as important as to learn how to save it.		
	11	The government should spend more money to improve public transportation.		
	12	People work because needing money to live.		

Writing Practice

A	Tra	anslate the following into English by putting the given words and phrases in the right order.
	1	Trẻ em bắt đầu học những kỹ năng xã hội từ gia đình chúng. (from their family / children / social skills / learning / start)
	2	Kinh nghiệm gián tiếp (học từ người khác) cũng quan trọng như kinh nghiệm trực tiếp. (firsthand experience / as / secondhand experience / is / important / as)
	3	Đi du lịch vòng quanh thế giới đôi hỏi nhiều thời gian và tiển bạc. (a lot of / traveling / time and money / around the world / requires)
	4	Tất cả chúng ta đều phải chịu trách nhiệm cho sự ô nhiễm không khí. (are / all of us / responsible / air pollution / for)
	5	Một cuốn tiểu sử kích thích sự quan tâm của tôi hơn một cuốn tiểu thuyết. (a novel/my interest/than/stimulates/more/a biography)
	6	Người ta có khuynh hướng cư xử khác đi khi họ mặc đồng phục. (people / wear uniforms / tend / when / to behave / they / differently)
	7	Ngày nay, sinh viên thường nhấn tin cho bạn bè trong giờ học. (their friends / nowadays / send / during their classes / frequently / text messages / students)
	8	Tivi có ảnh hưởng tiêu cực đối với cách cư xử của chúng ta bằng cách làm cho chúng ta kém năng động đi. (television / by making / has / on our behavior / less active / a negative influence / us)
	9	Chương trình học hiện tại sẽ thay đổi để đáp ứng những nhu cấu đa đạng của sinh viên. (various needs / should change / school curriculum / to meet / the current / the students')

10 Một phần xét công bằng có thể được đưa ra sau khi xem xét kỳ càng tất cả thông tin.

(all the information / a thorough examination / can be made / after / of / an impartial judgment)

B	Us	Using the given words or phrases, translate the following into English. $^{(\circ)}$					
	1	Người ta tin rằng tiến bạc làm cho họ hạnh phúc. (make ~ happy)					
	2	Viết nhật ký là một thối quen tốt. (keep a diary)					
	3	Tôi muốn sống ở một ký túc xá mà tôi có thể dành thời gian (vui chơi) với các bạn học của tôi. (live in a dormitory)					
	4	Không ai thích dọn dẹp những thứ người khác vứt lại cả. (clean up after)					
	5	Một số người kiêu căng đến nỗi không lắng nghe lời người khác. (too \sim to-V)					
	6	Có quá nhiều thứ cần phải thăm dò trong vũ trụ. (explore)					
	7	Ưu tiên của chúng ta là dành càng nhiều thời gian cho gia đình càng tốt. (spend time)					
	8	Có được sự riêng tư thì không dễ đối với những người nổi tiếng. (have privacy)					
r 'e	9	Phạt đòn trẻ em không phải là cách giáo dục tốt. (punish ~ physically)					
	10	Một số quốc gia đã phát triển vũ khí hạt nhân để tự phòng thủ. (defend oneself)					
	11	Tô: cấn một vài người bạn để tin cậy. (trust)					
	12	Thật khó để mặc đúng trang phục Hàn Quốc truyển thống. (Korean traditional clothes)					
	(*)	Ghi chú: Do tinh chất của loại bài tặp này, chúng tôi đặt ưu tiến hàng đầu vào việc dịch sát nghĩa chữ không phải vào văn phong. (ND)					

Writing Challenge

A	Tra	anslate the following into English.
	1	Các nhà lãnh đạo phải giối việc giao tiếp rõ rằng, bộc trực.
	2	Tôi đã học được những bài học quý giá nhất từ bố mẹ tôi.
	3	Con người hiện đại mang theo điện thoại di động đi khắp nơi.
	4	Rừng mưa nhiệt đới cung cấp cho chúng ta lượng oxy khổng lồ.
	5	Khi bạn học ngoại ngữ, điều quan trọng là phải tận dụng tốt từ điển.
	6	Các trường đại học yêu cấu sinh viên duy trì điểm tốt.
	7	Công nghệ hiện đại cho phép chúng ta trao đổi thông tin trực tiếp với những người sống ở đất nước khác.
	8	$M_{\mbox{\scriptsize p}}$ Thiên nhiên dạy cho chúng ta những điểu mà chúng ta không thể học ở trường.
	9	Để trở thành một công dân tốt, bạn phải tuân thủ luật pháp.
	10	Đi xe đạp không những tốt cho sức khỏe mà còn tạo hưng phấn nữa.
	11	Tôi thích đi du lịch đến mọi quốc gia châu Âu.

12 Những người sống nội tâm thích suy nghĩ một mình hơn là chia sẻ suy nghĩ của mình với người khác

Со	Complete the following paragraphs in English.				
1	Tôi thích sống ở một thị trấn nhỏ hơn là sống ở một thành phố lớn vì yếu tố an toàn. Ở thành phố lớn, người ta không biết người sống cạnh nhà họ là ai, và cũng không quan tâm đến an toàn của những người làng giếng.				
	In a big city, people neither know who lives next door to them, nor are they concerned about their neighbors' safety.				
2	Một số người thích ở nhà hơn là đi chơi trong suốt kỳ nghĩ. Đó là do họ có thể ở nhà xem phim thoài mái hơn là xài tiển ở bên ngoài.				
	That is because they can have a more comfortable time watching movies at home than by spending money outside.				
3	Chúng ta có thể học hỏi về cuộc sống bằng cách lắng nghe người lớn tuổi hơn. Họ đã trải qua nhiều điều và họ sắt sàng dạy cho chúng ta những điều họ đã học được.				
	They have gone through a lot of things, and they are ready to teach us what they have learned.				
4	Tình bạn không thể xây nên trong một ngày được. Để có được một tình bạn tốt, bạn phải nói thật với bạn bè và không nên chỉ trích họ.				
	Friendship is not built in one day.				
5	Bố mẹ không nên cho phép con cái xem tivi. Vì trẻ em không có các tiêu chuẩn đạo đức vững chắc, chúng có thể cố gắng bắt chước hành vi bao lực trên tivi.				
	Parents should not allow their children to watch television.				
6	Đọc sách không phải lúc nào cũng tốt cho sức khỏe tinh thần. Ví dụ, nếu bạn không đọc gì ngoài truyện cười, điềt đó có thể có hại cho sức khỏe tinh thần của bạn. Vì vậy, bố mẹ nên khuyên con cái đọc những cuốn sách có nội dung tốt như tiểu sử, truyện ngắn hoặc sách thi ca.				
	3				

For example, if you read nothing but comic books, it may be harmful to your mental health. Therefore, parents should advise their children to read good books, such as biographies, short

stories, or poetry books.

2

Participles / Voice

Phân từ / Thể

A Participles

Present Participles

- 1) Thì tiếp diễn
- The world is trying to stop global warming.
- Violence on television is increasing juvenile delinquency.
- 2) Tính từ mang tính chủ động
- We should protect every living creature.
- Not all television programs are interesting.

Past Participles

- 1) Thì hoàn thành
- We have experienced a great deal of stress in our daily lives.
- @ Before the airplane was invented, people had thought that only birds could fly.
- 2) Tính từ mang tính bi động
- Highly educated people may get better jobs than others.
- Some parents are never satisfied with their children's grades.

Participle Clauses

1) Các dang mênh đề phân từ

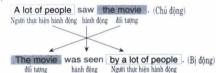
Mệnh đề phân từ được dùng để chỉ thời gian, sự nhượng bộ, điều kiện, lý do như mệnh đề trạng từ.

- Traveling in other countries, you should follow their customs. (= When you travel...)
- Being easily affected by the media, children should not watch television without their parents. (= Because they are...)
- Studying with a group, you will get distracted easily. (= If you study...)
- Hating electronic waves, I spend a lot of time in front of my computer. (= Though I hate...)
- Wearing her glasses, my grandmother was reading a book. (= With her glasses on...)
- Quan hệ giữa mệnh để phân từ với cụm hoặc mệnh để trạng từ
- Getting hotter, people plan outdoor activities. (X)
 - → With the weather getting hotter, people plan outdoor activities. (= As the weather gets...)

- Exploring outer space, we should solve the environmental problems on Earth. (X)
 - Before exploring outer space, we should solve the environmental problems on Earth. (= Before we explore...)
- 3) Một số mệnh để phân từ được dùng làm cum đặc ngữ
- Generally speaking, people with good eating habits do not frequently get sick.
- 9 Judging from my experience, some movies are not worth watching.
- @ Compared with nonfiction, fiction is more fun to read.

B Voice

The Active and Passive Voice



- Deforestation accelerates global warming.
 - → Global warming is accelerated by deforestation.
- @ Teachers should teach their students to follow the school rules.
 - → Students should be taught to follow the school rules by their teachers.
- Students should submit their homework on time.
 - Homework should be submitted on time (by students).

When to Use the Passive Voice

- 1) Khi đối tương nhân hành đông quan trong hơn người thực hiện hành động
- Our environment should be protected (by us).
- Ohildren should be taught (by their parents) to take responsibility for their actions.
- 2) Khi người thực hiện hành động không rõ ràng hoặc không quan trong
- Nobody is allowed (by hospital authorities) to use a mobile phone in the hospital.
- Many soldiers were killed in the war (by other soldiers).
- 3) Khi người nói muốn diễn tả ý khách quan
- 1 It was found in some research that children tend to imitate the parent who is the same sex.
- 1 The sample was collected from the water, and the number of germs was counted.

Check-Up

A	Fill in each	blank with th	e correct f	form of the	given verb

1	I found documentaries	. (Dore)
2	There is a heavy rain	in the countryside. (fall)
3	Some students	to participate in extracurricular activities. (require)
4	People	others' secrets are trustworthy. (keep)
5	South Korea	rapidly since the Korean War. (develop)
6	Parents are now	that there is too much violence on television. (complain
7	We should have	the food shortage. (prevent)
8	Adolescents	on television are often rebellious. (show)
9	The greenhouse effect will	many countries in danger. (put)
10	Plastic bottles should	. (recycle)
11	Every person	a knack for something. (have)
12	Ten years ago public trans	portation more frequently than nowadays (us

В	Cor	rect the errors in the following sentences. Some sentences have no errors.
	1	Usually, people live in rural areas are friendly.
	2	The polluting air may cause lung cancer.
	3	Nuclear weapons should not used in any circumstances.
	4	In my opinion, a lecture class is more tired than a discussion class.
	5	Children raising in large families usually get along well with others.
	6	Many scholars have acknowledged the negative impact of the media.
	7	Generally speaking, a lot of people using computers to get updated information.
	8	Young children should not permitted to travel by themselves.
f 	9	The president of our country elects every five years.
	10	Addicting to the Internet, some children feel awkward when talking to others face to face.
	11	It is important that foreign language classes be staffed with good teachers.
	12	Natural sciences give us insight into the future as well as teaching us about the origin of the world.

Writing Practice

Translate	the following into English by putting the given words and phrases in the right order.
	a có thể tìm thấy mục tiêu của mình trong cuộc sống bằng cách làm công việc của mình. / people / their goals / by doing / may find / their jobs)
	râu hỏi triết học vẫn chưa được trả lời. t / many / unanswered / philosophical questions)
-	ách tự học, bạn có thể thực hành cách lập luận. by learning / can practice / by yourself / reasoning)
	những người tốt nghiệp phổ thông, những người tốt nghiệp đại học có thể có nhiều cơ hội kiếm việc hơn. ave/compared with/college graduates/high school graduates/more job opportunities)
	hi di cấm trại, bạn nên kiểm tra thời tiết trước đã. / before / the weather / you should / going camping / first)
	ta nên chuẩn bị sẵn sàng phòng bất cứ thảm họa thiên nhiên nào có thể xảy ra. sssible / be prepared for / natural disasters / we should)
	ay người ta quá quan tâm đến cuộc sống riêng tư của những người nổi tiếng. eople are / nowadays / celebrities' private lives / interested in)
	vấn để môi trường không được giải quyết có thể đe dọa tương lai của chúng ta. reaten / unsolved / our future / environmental problems)
	người cho rằng giáo viên nên được sinh viên đánh giá. e evaluated / teachers should / by their students / some people)
	ta bị ảnh hưởng bởi những người trẻ tuổi hơn cũng như là những người lớn tuổi hơn. er people/are influenced by/older people/we/as well as)

Usi	ng the given words or phrases, translate the following into English.
1	Bạn không nên làm ổn khi đang xem phim trong rạp, (watch movies)
2	Nhiều nguyên nhân của chứng béo phi đã được công chúng biết đến. (obesity, know)
3	Một khi đã biết được, ngôn ngữ sẽ không thể để dàng bị quên đi. (acquire)
4	Các nước đang phát triển cần sự giúp đỡ từ những nước khác. (developing countries)
5	Một số người bị tước đi cơ hội được giáo dục bài bản. (deprived of)
6	Nếu bạn tập thể dục hàng ngày, bạn sẽ có thể luôn luôn mạnh khốc. (work out)
7	Bằng cách sử dụng phương tiện giao thông công cộng, chúng ta có thể làm giảm ô nhiễm không khí. (use: reduce)
8	Theo ý kiến của tôi, không thể biện hộ cho bạo lực được. (justify)
9	Các khác biệt văn hóa có thể được khắc phục chỉ khi chúng ta cố gắng chấp nhận những khác biệt đó. (overcome
10	Xét theo lịch sử của loài người, thật khó để tạo ra một thế giới không có chiến tranh. (create)
11	Những người tốt nghiệp đại học thường được xem là thiếu kiến thức thực tế. (consider)
12	Mặc dù đã cải thiện chất lượng cuộc sống, sự phát triển công nghiệp cũng đã tạo ra nhiều vấn để xã hội.

B

Writing Challenge

Translate the following into English. Không có gì có thể đạt được chỉ bằng sư may mắn. Trẻ em dễ bi điều gì đó mới mẻ lôi cuốn. Ngay cả một lần không giữ lời hựa cũng có thể làm tổn hai tình ban. Sau khi chịu đựng những gian khổ, ban sẽ đến được bước ngoặt quyết đinh. Trước khi điện được phát minh, nhịp sống của chúng ta rất châm chạp. Nếu nhiều người hơn quan tâm đến phúc lợi xã hội, thế giới sẽ trở thành một nơi tốt hơn để sống. Đôi khi trẻ em bối rối không biết tất cả thông tin trên tivi là đúng hay không. Chúng ta phải cứu lấy trái đất khỏi bi hủy hoại thêm nữa. Khi nói chuyên với ai, ban nên nhìn thẳng vào mắt người đó. 10 Nếu tôi được phép chọn nơi để sống, tôi sẽ sống ở New York. 11 Người có tính tư thân vận động thích làm việc một mình. 12 Công nhân rằng trẻ em có khuynh hướng bất chước bố me, các bắc cha me nên cố gắng trở thành những

tâm gương sáng.

B Complete the following paragraphs in English.

So với cuộc sống ở một thành phố lớn, tôi thấy cuộc sống ở một thị trấn nhỏ nghe có vẻ hấp dẫn hơn. Sống ở một thị trấn nhỏ, tôi có thể quen biết tất cả lăng giếng của tôi. Mối quan hệ tương tác xã hội này sẽ giúp bảo vệ tôi khỏi những tôi ác có thể xảy ra.

Living in a small town, I may get to know all of my neighbors. This social interaction will help protect me from possible crimes.

2 Tôi cho rằng tính cách của con người được quyết định bởi cha mẹ khi còn thơ ấu. Ví dụ, trẻ em hư hòng rất có thể sẽ trở thành những người lớn có tính tự cho mình là trung tâm. Trái lại, trẻ em bị bỏ bê có khuynh hướng phát triển tính thiếu tư trong.

I believe that a person's personality is determined by his parents during his childhood.

On the contrary, neglected children tend to develop low self-esteem.

3 Xét theo kinh nghiệm của tôi, nước Pháp quyến rũ hơn bất cứ nước nào khác. Đặc biệt Paris được mệnh danh là thành phố của nghệ thuật và kiến trúc. Vì vậy, tôi muốn đến thăm nước Pháp một lần nữa nếu tôi có cơ hội.

Paris especially has been called a city of art and architecture. Considering that, I would like to visit France again if I had a chance.

4 Những người nổi tiếng được xã hội quan tâm thường tham gia vào các hoạt động xã hội. Sự tham gia của họ rất đáng khích lệ vì người ta thường lắng nghe họ. Tuy vậy, họ có thể gây ra những hậu quả xấu cho phong trào khi ho đem đến cho công chúng thông tin sai lac.

Socially engaged celebrities often participate in social movements.

However, they may cause bad consequences for the movement when they misinform the public.

5 Tivi có hại cho trẻ em. Trẻ em còn bé rất dễ bị tivi tác động. Ví dụ, người ta nói rằng trẻ sơ sinh xem tivi quá nhiều có thể mắc chứng tư kỷ.

Television is bad for children.

For instance, it is said that infants who watch television too much may become autistic.

6 Ở nước tôi, gấu được xem là loài động vật quan trọng. Theo truyền thuyết lập quốc của chúng tôi, Dangun, người lập ra đất nước, ra đời từ sư kết hợp giữa con trai của Thương để và một người phụ nữ do gấu biến thành.

According to our national foundation myth, *Dangun*, who founded the country, was born from a union between a son of God and a woman who was transformed from a bear.

3

Parallelism / Comparison

Cấu trúc đồng dạng / So sánh

A Parallelism

Câu trình bày thông tin thành một danh mục hay một chuỗi bao gồm hai phần hay hơn có cũng chức năng ngữ pháp được gọi là câu có cấu trúc đồng dạng.

Junk foods may cause diabetes, heart disease, and may make you gain weight. (X)

- → Junk foods may cause diabetes, heart disease, and obesity. (từ)
- → Junk foods may cause you to develop diabetes, to have heart disease, and to gain weight. (cum til)
- → If you eat junk foods, it is said that you may develop diabetes, that you may have heart disease, and that you may gain weight. (mệnh để)

Parallelism with Words

- Not every expensive handmade item is both creative and an art. (X)
 - → Not every expensive handmade item is both creative and artistic. (tính từ)
- @ Trains, buses, and a ferry are examples of public transportation. (X)
 - → Trains, buses, and ferries are examples of public transportation. (danh từ)
- Some work needs to be done not quickly but precise. (X)
 - → Some work needs to be done not quickly but precisely. (trang từ)

Parallelism with Phrases

- He not only finished his reading assignment but also writing an essay. (X)
 - → He not only finished his reading assignment but also wrote an essay. (cum đông từ)
- 1 It is easier to forgive than hating someone. (X)
 - → It is easier to forgive than to hate someone. (cum động từ nguyên mẫu)
- Working out, eating organic foods, and to take a rest are the best ways to maintain good health. (X)
 - Working out, eating organic foods, and taking a rest are the best ways to maintain good health. (cum danh động tử)

Parallelism with Clauses

- When we took our trip, we not only visited Rome but also skiing in Switzerland. (X)
 - → When we took our trip, we not only visited Rome, but we also went sking in Switzerland.
- The mass media neither gives us the necessary information nor telling us the truth. (X)
 - The mass media neither gives us the necessary information, nor does it tell us the truth.
- Either you save money for a rainy day or just splurge today. (X)
 - → Either you save money for a rainy day, or you just splurge today.

B Comparison

Positive Degree

So sánh bằng mô tả mức độ bằng nhau giữa hai đối tượng.

- Oconsumption is as important as production to boost the economy.
- A discussion class is not as boring as a lecture class.
- O Larry is not so successful as his brother.

Comparative Degree

So sánh hơn mô tả một trong hai đối tương có mức độ trội hơn đối tượng kia.

- Our government charges higher prices on gas than other countries.
- 1 It is getting harder to make a good living.
- You should spend less money than now to save for the future.

Superlative Degree

So sánh nhất mô tả một trong ba đối tương trở lên có mức độ vượt trội nhất.

- Air pollution is the most imminent problem of all the environmental issues.
- The Industrial Revolution brought about the most radical changes in human history.
- The easiest way to predict the future is to create it.

- O Nothing is as important as your health.
- Parents affect their children's psychological development more than any other person.
- The more sincere you are to your friends, the better your friends will treat you.
- O I think that owning a dog is the same as owning a cat.

O Check-Up

Δ	Fill in each	blank with th	e correct	form o	of the	given	word.
---	--------------	---------------	-----------	--------	--------	-------	-------

1	Owing to the Internet, information searches	have become	and faster. (easy)
2	Smoking heavily and too	o much are bad habits th	at will harm your health. (crink)
3	In my opinion, the violin makes	sound of all me	usical instruments, (beautful)
4	Usually, the speeches of good leaders are	either persuasive or	. (inform)
5	Adventurous people are neither afraid of fai	lure nor	about danger. (worr/)
6	Living with a stranger is not as enjoyable as	S W	ith your friend. (live)
7	Dogs aretoward huma	ans than any other pet. (friendly)
8	Some people feel more comfortable when the	y are alone than	are with others. (hey)
9	We need formal education not only	knowledge but	also to learn social skills. (gain)
10	Some documentaries are as	as lectures. (educ	cation)
11	The harder you work,	ou will get to your drea	m. (close)
12	Some classes are too boring to concentrate	or	to catch up with. (fast)

В	Со	rrect the errors in the following sentences. Some sentences have no errors.
	1	Teenagers are more influenced by their peers than their parents.
	2	Some documentary films are more entertaining as blockbuster movies.
	3	Good communication skills are most necessary quality a leader should develop.
	4	The more people have, they want more.
	5	Cats are one of intelligent animals that I have ever seen.
	6	We can learn both cooperation and competition by playing games with others.
	7	Many people enjoy comedy, romantic, or action movies.
	8	Indoor activities are usually not as expensive than outdoor activities.
	9	A modern apartment building is robust and more convenient than a traditional house.
	10	I want to live in a studio near campus, not a dormitory.
	11	In order to write a good essay, you should not only know vocabulary and grammar but also have knowledge.

12 Every person is affected by his environment either directly nor indirectly.

Writing Practice

1	Sống ở thành phố đất đô hơn sống ở miền quê. (than / is / living in the country / more expensive / living in the city)
2	Tôi cảm thấy tự tin khi ở cùng với bạn bè hơn là khi tôi một mình. (when I am alone / more confident / with my friends / I feel / than / when I am)
3	Tôi hy vọng trường của chúng tôi sẽ mua nhiều máy vi tính hơn, chứ không phải nhiều sách hơn. (our school / not more books / more computers / I hope / will buy)
4	Ngày nay, chuyên môn cao quan trọng hơn bất cứ phẩm chất nào khác ở người giáo viên. (than any other / today / more important / expertise / in a teacher / quality / is)
5	Điều hành một doanh nghiệp tốn nhiều tiến hơn là mua một căn nhà. (to run a business / much more money / it costs / to buy a house / than)
6	Người xem tivi quá nhiều không thể giữ được đáng vẻ gọn gàng và cũng không có được đầu óc minh mắn. (nor/a couch potato/have a sound mind/stay in shape/can/neither)
7	Thành tích học tập không quan trọng bằng sức khỏe của mình. (is not as / important / academic achievement / one's health / as)
8	Thanh thiếu niên dành nhiều thời gian với bạn bè hơn là với cha mẹ. (than / with their friends / adolescents / with their parents / spend more time)
9	Thức ăn vặt, như bánh pizza, bánh hặmbược, và xôđa không tốt cho sức khỏe.

10 Người ta học được những bài học quan trọng nhất vào thời thơ ấu. (in their childhood / learn / the most important / people / lessons)

Us	ing the given words or phrases, translate the following into English.
1	Một số người lớn thiếu kiến thức như trẻ em. $(as \sim as)$
2	Người ta thường tránh những công việc nguy hiểm, dơ bẩn hoặc khó khăn. (avoid)
3	Làm lãnh đạo một nhóm thì cặng thẳng hơn làm một thành viên. (more stressful)
4	Giáo viên không nên dạy sinh viên của mình cạnh tranh với nhau mà phải hợp tác. (not ~ but ~)
5	Một khi bạn tốt nghiệp trung học, bạn có thể hoặc là kiếm một công việc hoặc là đi học đại học. (either \sim or \sim)
6	Một số trang web không thích hợp cho cả người lớn lẫn trẻ em. (both \sim and \sim)
7	Phim kinh dị thường không những đáng sợ mà còn đẩy bạo lực. (not only ~ but also ~)
8	Cả báo lẫn tạp chí đều là những nguồn tốt để thu thập kiến thức phổ thông. (both \sim and \sim)
9	Bạn có thể học được nhiều điều từ một cuốn sách như từ giáo viên của bạn. $(as \sim as)$
10	Bạn có thể mặc trang phục truyền thống hoặc vào ngày lễ truyền thống hoặc ở một buổi tiệc trang trọng. (either \sim or \sim)
11	Để trở thành một họa sĩ, tính sáng tạo quan trọng như bất cử phẩm chất nào. (as \sim as any \sim)
12	Chúng ta có thể học được nhiều sự kiện lịch sử từ một cuốn tiểu thuyết lịch sử như từ một giờ học lịch sử.

B

Writing Challenge

Translate the following into English. Tôi thích nghỉ ngơi ở nhà hơn chơi đùa bên ngoài. Ô nhiễm môi trường là một trong những vấn đề nghiệm trong nhất trên thế giới. Vũ khí hạt nhân nguy hiểm hơn bất cứ vũ khí nào khác. Ở Mỹ, chất lượng của một số trường công không thấp hơn chất lượng của trường tư. Trượt tuyết là một trong những hoạt động ngoài trời phổ biến nhất vào mùa đông. Không có gì quý hơn gia đình của mình. Tôi thấy xem phim thích hơn nhiều so với đọc sách. Thức ăn ở nhà hàng không lành mạnh như thức ăn ở nhà. Trong số những môn thể thao mùa hè phổ biến là bơi, lướt ván và câu cá. 10 Tôi cho rằng chơi đá banh có ích cho sức khỏe tinh thần hơn là chơi đàn piano. 11 Không phải tiền mặt mà cũng không phải thẻ tín dụng có ích trên một hòn đảo hoang vắng.

12 Tôi nghĩ rằng máy bay là phương tiên giao thông vận tải có ích nhất mà chúng ta đã từng phát minh.

В	Сс	Complete the following paragraphs in English.			
	1	Tôi đồng ý với ý kiến rằng trò chơi quan trọng đối với người lớn cũng như trẻ em. Người ta nói rằng trò chơi dạy sự hợp tác, một trong những nhân tố quan trọng nhất của sự thành công, và trò chơi cũng dạy cách vượt qua thử thách I agree with the idea that games are as important for adults as they are for children.			
	2	Nếu phải chọn giữa một cái camera, một quả bóng và một con thủ, tôi sẽ chọn quả bóng để cho một đứa bé. Ngày nay, trẻ em có khuynh hướng dành quá nhiều thời gian ở trong nhà, vì vậy tôi muốn cho đứa bé cơ hội được chơi đua bên ngoài. Bạn không thể chơi đá bóng trong nhà, trong khi đó bạn có thể chơi với camera hay con thú ở bất cử chỗ nào.			
		Given the choice between a camera, a soccer ball, and an animal, I would choose to give a child a soccer ball. These days, children tend to spend too much time indoors, so I want to give the child a chance to play outside.			
	3	Lý do tại sao học sinh đi học không những là do họ cần được giáo dục bài bản mà còn là do họ cần học cách hòa nh với xã hội. Bằng cách chơi đùa với bạn bè và tuân thủ những quy định của nhà trường, họ có thể hiểu biết xã hội.			
		By playing with their friends and following school rules, they can learn about society.			
	4	Tôi thích những món hàng làm bằng máy hơn những món hàng làm bằng tay. Thông thường thì hàng làm bằng tay không những đất tiến mà còn cực kỳ mỏng manh. Trái lại, sản phẩm làm bằng máy thường rẻ tiền, chắc chấn và để sử dụng.			
		I prefer machine-made items to hand-made ones.			
		On the contrary, machine-made products are mostly cheap, strong, and easy to handle.			
	5	Cách tốt nhất để trải qua ngày cuối tuần là nghỉ ngơi ở nhà. Ở trường hoặc ở nơi làm việc, chúng ta luôn bị nhiều người vậy quanh. Đôi khi chúng ta cần phải tách ra khỏi người khác và được ở yên một mình.			
		The best way to spend a weekend is to take a rest at home.			
		Sometimes, we need to get away from others and enjoy being alone.			

6 Tôi cho rằng phòng ăn là căn phòng quan trọng nhất trong nhà. Vì hầu hết mọi người đều dành nhiều thời gian ở bên ngoài hơn ở nhà, giờ ăn tối thường là thời gian duy nhất mà tất cả các thành viên của gia đình tập trung lại. Vào lúc đó, phòng àn cung cấp không gian để các thành viên trong gia đình có thể nói chuyện với nhau.
I believe the dining room is the most important room in a house.

At that time, the dining room provides a space where family members can talk to each other.

4

Noun Clauses / Adjective Clauses

Mệnh đề danh từ / Mệnh đề tính từ

A Noun Clauses

1 That-clauses

- That the human brain develops even after puberty was reported by some scholars. (Chù ngữ)
 - = It was reported by some scholars that the human brain develops even after puberty. (Chủ ngữ giả-chủ ngữ thất)
- ⊕ Some people argue that children are easily influenced by environmental changes.

 (Túc tử)
- The teacher made it clear that the homework should be submitted by Monday. (Túc từ giả-túc từ thát)
- My concern is that people do not care about others. (Bổ ngữ)
- 1 support the argument that all students should wear school uniforms. (Đổng vi)

Whether- / If-clauses

- Whether you have a diploma or not makes a huge difference in a job market. (Chủ ngữ)
- Before buying something with a credit card, you should consider if you can afford it.
 (Túc tií)
- 1 The issue is not whether you can live with others or not. (Bổ ngữ)

→ Wh-clauses

- What has been said cannot be reversed. (Chủ ngữ)
- 1 don't know whom I should trust. (Túc từ)
- lgnorance is when you reject something you do not know anything about. (Bổ ngữ)

B Adjective Clauses

Relative Pronouns

Đại từ quan hệ là các đại từ như who, which, that, whose, who(m).

- 1) Vai trò của đại từ quan hệ
- a. Chủ ngữ
- People who have pets are usually kind and warm.
- A lime is a green fruit which looks like a lemon.
- Not everything that is learned is contained in books.

b. Sơ hữu cách

- There are some children whose parents are too busy to take care of them.
- Students are recommended to read books of which authors are still alive. (= ...whose authors...)

c. Túc từ

- People need friends with whom they can share secrets. (= ...friends whom... share secrets with.)
- I want to have a job which I really like. (= ...a job I really like.)
- Some people wish to move to a country in which they can live without laws. (= ...a country where...)

2) Cách sử dụng

- a. Mệnh để quan hệ giới hạn mô tả hoặc định nghĩa từ đứng trước.
- The student who is sitting by the window is dozing. (= The student that is...)
- Jane Goodall is a researcher who is renowned for her studies on chimpanzees.
 (= ...a researcher that is renowned...)
- 1 New York is one of the most attractive cities that I have ever visited.
- b. Mệnh để quan hệ không giới hạn bổ sung thêm thông tin cho từ đứng trước.
- Mike, who is sitting by the window, is dozing. (NOT Mike, that is...)
- This book was written by Jane Goodall, who is renowned for her studies on chimpanzees.
- 1 do not like to watch television shows, which are often dumb and time-wasting.
- 3) Mệnh đề quan hệ được rút gọn
- The student sitting by the window is dozing. (= ...who is sitting...)
- Almost half of the people attending the meeting were not invited. (= ...who attended...)
- The road leading to success can be full of hardships. (= ...which leads...)

Relative Adverbs

Trang từ quan hê được dùng để chỉ nơi chốn (where), thời gian (when), lý do (why) và cách thức (how).

- I chose the place where I would spend my summer vacation. (= I chose where...)
- Nobody can tell exactly the time when our universe came into being. (= ...tell exactly when...)
- The reason why Billy was absent from school is not known yet. (= Why Billy was absent...)
- The Internet has greatly changed how we communicate with others. (= ...the way we communicate...)

Check-Up

	l in the blanks with the a <i>ere,</i> or <i>what</i> .	ppropriate words: that, whether, who, whose, which, how
1	People think	they have vacations to take breaks from their daily routines.
2	It is true	most adolescents are rebellious.
3	I hope to have a job	I can earn a lot of money.
4	you are	rich or poor does not decide your worth.
5	Scientists have studied	can be done to stop global warming.
6	I trust Susan, a friend	always takes my side.
7	Many people do not know	serious Internet crimes are.
8	I like discussion classes in	I can express my opinions.
9	Some moviegoers do not like	e a movie story is too simple.
10	a good	teacher should do is encourage his students to try harder.
11	My parents told me	I should not take advantage of others.
12	The question is	there is something we can learn from video games or not.

Со	Correct the errors in the following sentences. Some sentences have no errors.				
1	It is you which decides your future.				
2	I do not believe what our future has already been decided.				
3	Expensive restaurants do not let in people who clothing is untidy.				
4	We should decide now that we can do for the next generation.				
5	A number of people make online communities which they can make friends.				
6	The government should help people who cannot take care of themselves.				
7	I would like to build a small house that I can live with my family.				
8	You should follow your own rules what guide your behavior.				
9	Scientists wonder why we will have another ice age in the future or not.				
10	Some people do not realize how much we rely on natural resources.				
11	Who are confident in their knowledge do not hesitate to speak in public.				
12	There is no room for doubt that modern technology has increased people's quality of life.				

B

Writing Practice

Tôi muốn đi du lịch đến một đất nước mà tôi có thể học được một nền văn hóa mới. (a new culture / where / travel to / I can / I would like to / learn / a country)
Những người muốn duy trì sức khỏe nên tập thể dục đều đặn. (maintain their health / should have / who want to / people / regular workouts)
Mất rất nhiều thời gian để tìm được một công việc có thể thỏa mãn tất cả yêu cầu của bạn. (to find a job / all your needs / it takes / which can satisfy / a lot of time)
Đúng là chúng ta có thể học được những bài học quý giá từ quá khứ. (from the past / that / valuable lessons / it is true / we can learn)
Một người có thái độ lạc quan với cuộc sống có thể chịu dựng bất cử gian khổ nào. (can endure / a person / toward his life / who has / any hardship / an optimistic attitude)
Đặt ra những điều ưu tiên có nghĩa là bạn sắp xếp những điều phải làm theo thứ tự. (in order / setting priorities / you put / means that / the things to do)
Tôi không hiểu tại sao chúng ta phải mặc đồng phục đi học. (we / school uniforms / why / I do not / should wear / understand)
Áp lực từ bạn đồng trang lửa là một lý do tại sao một số sinh viên không thể nào tránh được rắc rối. (can't stay / peer pressure is / some students / why / out of trouble / one reason)
Một số người không thể từ bỏ được những thói quen xấu làm hại sức khỏe của họ. (harm their health / cannot break / some people / their bad habits / which)

(what kind of job / you wish to become / what kind of person / you will have / is more important (han)

Us	ing the given words or phrases, translate the following into English.
1	Tôi muốn đến thăm một viện báo tàng có nhiều bức họa. (visit a museum)
2	Thật thú vị được nói chuyện với một người có thị hiếu riêng khác với tôi. (personal taste)
3	Tôi muốn trở thành một nhà khoa học nghiên cứu vũ trụ. (outer space)
4	Kỳ nghỉ là thời gian chúng ta có thể thưởng thức cuộc sống với nhịp sống chậm rãi. (slow-paced life)
5	Không phải người nào có nhiều kiến thức cũng khôn ngoạn cả. (have knowledge)
6	Một số người lý luận rằng sự toàn cầu hóa đã bình thường hóa các nền văn hóa khác nhau. (globalization; normalize
7	Kiến thức khoa học chúng ta học được ở trường đôi khi có ích trong cuộc sống hàng ngày của chúng ta. (daily life)
8	Những người không tập thể dục đều đặn thường có vóc dáng xấu. (in bad shape)
9	Báo cáo nói rằng đồng phục đi học cản trở học sinh thể hiện cá tính của mình. (hinder ~ from ~)
10	Người ta khuyên rằng những bệnh nhân huyết áp cao nên tránh những tình huống căng thẳng. (It is recommended that ~)
11	Nhiều quốc gia đang cố gắng phát triển những nguồn năng lượng mới có thể thay thế nhiên liệu hóa thạch. (fossil fucls)
12	Bằng cách đọc tiểu thuyết hư cấu, tôi có thể hiểu được tình cảm của người khác mà trước đây tôi chưa từng biết.

Writing Challenge

Tra	anslate the following into English.
1	Tôi tin rằng cha mẹ biết điểu gì là tốt nhất cho con cái của họ.
2	Những món hàng làm bằng tay thiếu sự sáng tạo thường không đất tiền lấm.
3	Tôi muốn sống với một người có nền tảng văn hóa khác với tôi.
4	Nhiều bậc cha mẹ mong con mình trở thành những người giỏi hơn những người khác.
5	Điều quan trọng đối với tôi là có một người bạn mà tôi có thể cùng đi du lịch.
6	Nếu bạn bị sa sút thể chất, bạn sẽ hiểu những người khỏe mạnh may mắn như thế nào.
7	Tôi không muốn trở thành một kẻ kiêu căng coi thường người khác.
8	Nhiều học sinh trung học không biết họ muốn làm gì sau khi tốt nghiệp.
9	Những nhà lãnh đạo xã hội giỏi luôn luôn nghĩ về những gì họ có thể làm cho xã hội.
10	Bác sĩ nghiên cứu cách họ có thể bảo vệ con người trước những bệnh tật khác nhau.
11	Trò chơi video bạo lực có thể tác động tiêu cực đến trẻ em, những người chưa chín chắn về mặt tâm lý.
12	Tôi tôn trọng vua Sejong, người đã có thành tựu vĩ đại nhất là phát minh ra bảng chữ cái tiếng Hàr. gọi là Har

B Complete the following paragraphs in English.

1 Vì vấn để tin tưởng lẫn nhau, tôi muốn chọn bạn cùng phòng cho riêng mình thay vì là bạn cùng phòng nhà trưởng phân công. Nếu tôi sống với bạn cùng phòng do tôi chọn, tôi có thể sống chung phòng thoài mái hơn, tôi có thể nêu ra và giải quyết vấn để dễ dàng hơn.

For a trust issue, I want to choose my own roommate instead of having a roommate assigned by the school

2 Tôi không đồng ý với ý kiến rằng chúng ta có thể học được về cuộc sống bằng cách chơi game. Thật lòng mà nói, tôi nghi ngờ không biết có điều gì chúng ta có thể học ở game không. Lý do chúng ta chơi game là để giảm căng thẳng. Tuy vậy, nếu chúng ta cố gắng học một điều gì đó trong khi đang chơi game, chúng ta sẽ cảm thấy căng thẳng thêm.
I do not agree with the idea that we can learn about life by playing games.

The reason why we play games is to relieve our stress. However, if we try to learn something while we are playing games, we will feel stressed out.

3 Đúng là bạn nên có mục tiêu trong cuộc sống. Nếu bạn không biết mục tiêu của bạn là gì, có lễ bạn sẽ không chịu dựng được bất cứ gian khổ nào. Hơn nữa, tôi cho rằng cuộc sống không mục đích làm cho người ta bi quan.

It is true that you should have a goal in your life.

Moreover, I believe that an aimless life makes a person pessimistic.

4 Học sinh trung học còn trẻ đến nỗi chúng không biết phải học gì ở trưởng. Nếu được phép học bất cứ môn nào chúng muốn, chúng có thể tránh những mòn khó nhưng quan trọng. Vì vậy, các nhà giáo dục nên giúp học sinh chọn những khóa học cần thiết.

If they are allowed to learn anything they want, they may avoid the subjects which are difficult but important. Therefore, educators should help students choose the necessary courses.

5 Theo ý kiến của tôi, học sinh nên mặc đồng phục đi học. Học sinh mặc đồng phục ít có khả năng dính đến rắc rối hơn học sinh không mặc đồng phục. Ngoài ra, không còn nghi ngờ rằng mặc đồng phục kinh tế hơn mặc quản áo thông thường.

In my opinion, every student should wear a school uniform.

In addition, there is no doubt that

wearing a school uniform is more economical than wearing casual clothes.

6 Tôi muốn phát minh một cổ máy thời gian. Nếu tôi chế tạo được một chiếc, tôi có thể đi thăm một số lãnh tụ quốc gia trong lịch sử của chúng ta và cho họ biết những gì họ nên làm và những gì họ không nên làm. Ngoài ra, tôi có thể đi đến tương lại để xem thế giới sẽ thay đổi như thế nào.

I would like to invent a time machine.

Besides, I may go to the

future and see how the world will have changed.



Adverb Clauses / Conditionals

Mệnh đề trạng từ / Câu điều kiện

A Adverb Clauses

Time

- O Some people tend to eat a lot when they feel stressed out.
- While we were sleeping, a burglar broke into the house.
- He plans to study abroad after he graduates from university.
- O Usually, I reserve judgment on someone until I get to know him better.
- O Since I graduated from high school, I have missed my school uniform.
- I agree that children should begin learning a foreign language as soon as they start school.

Reason

- I want to get a high-paying job because I should support my family.
- Since children cannot live by themselves, their parents should be responsible for them.
- 1 As it is raining again, we have to cancel our picnic.

○ Condition

- If I were a pet, I would not want to live with humans.
- Unless you want to lose your job, you should be punctual. (= If you don't want...)
- In case you are in danger, you should carry your cell phone all the time.
- As long as you are healthy, you can do anything.

△ Contrast

- There are many things that you can learn from children though they are young.
- Even if you are well prepared for an exam, it is possible for you to make mistakes.
- While sports mainly strengthen your body, the arts can enhance your soul.
- Most rural areas are safe whereas some urban areas are dangerous even during the daytime.

Purpose & Result

- You should keep your friends' secrets so that you can be trusted. (Muc dich)
- Some people are so immoral that they take advantage of others' weaknesses. Ket qua
- Global warming is such a problem that some islanders worry that their islands might sink. (Két quå)

B Conditionals

Present Condition

If ... đông từ ở thì hiện tại đơn ... đông từ ở thì hiện tại đơn

Câu điều kiện hiện tai được dùng để diễn tả những kết quả hiển nhiên hoặc những kết quả theo thói quen.

- If water is boiled at 100°C, it changes into vapor. (= When water is boiled...)
- 1 If I am surrounded by strangers, I feel unsafe. (= When I am surrounded...)

The First Conditional

If ... động từ ở thì hiện tại đơn ... will + động từ nguyên mẫu ...

Câu điều kiện loại 1 ngu ý rằng hành động ở mệnh đề if rất có thể xảy ra.

- If you work hard, you will be promoted soon.
- If you don't try anything, you won't be able to decide if you like it or not.

☐ The Second Conditional

If ... động từ ở thì quá khứ đơn ... would (could/might/should) + động từ nguyên mẫu ...

Câu điều kiện loại 2 được dùng khi sự giả định trái với sự thật ở hiện tại hoặc khi chúng ta không muốn hành động ở mệnh để if xảy ra.

- If I were able to predict the future. I would become rich.
- If we found another planet to live on, we could relieve overpopulation on Earth.

If ... đồng từ ở thì quá khứ hoàn thành ... would (could/might/should) + have + phân từ quá khứ

Câu điều kiện loại 3 được dùng để diễn tả sự giả định trái với sự việc đã xẩy ra trong quá khứ. Lưu ý là ở loại câu này thời gian là quá khứ và điều kiện đó không thể được thực hiện vì hành động ở mênh để if đã không xảy ra.

- If I had done more research, I could have written a more thorough report.
- If we had been careful about the environment, the animals would have not lost their shelters.

5 Important Structures

- If it were not for electricity, our lives would be very inconvenient.
- 1 If it had not been for my parents' support, I couldn't have finished college.
- 1 wish I could travel back in time to meet Albert Einstein.
- I wish my country had not gone through the economic crisis in 1999.

Check-Up

1	Us	sing the appropriate conjunctions, combine the following sentence pairs.				
	1 →	People feel satisfied. + They are praised for what they have done.				
	2 →	You do not face your problem. + You cannot solve it.				
	3	Children will be much healthier. + They do not eat fast food.				
	4	You quit your job. + You should give notice to your employer.				
	5 →	Some teachers want their students to attend class. + They get sick.				
	6 →	I grew up in a big city. + I did not have many chances to see wildflowers.				
	7 →	You live in a foreign country. + You cannot learn its language without making an effort.				
	8 →	We all know. + Every human being is destined to die someday.				
	9	Students attend a summer camp. + They can participate in various outdoor activities.				
	10	Some people prefer hiking in the mountains. + Others prefer swimming in the sea.				

B Correct the errors in the following sentences. Some sentences have no errors.					
	1	Some cities are such dangerous that nobody is seen on the streets after dusk.			
	2	If it had not been for the Ice Age, the dinosaurs might survive much longer.			
	3	I wish every student have his own computer at school.			
	4	While some people wish to work for a big company, others prefer a small company.			
	5	Unless you are not willing to sacrifice yourself for your children, you should not become a parent			
	6	You are recommended to keep the receipt while you buy something.			
	7	If we could prevent school violence, the juvenile crime rate would be much lower than now.			
	8	Before you miss your favorite TV show, you can watch it on the Internet.			
t.	9	Some parents cannot take care of their children even though they love their children.			
	10	As long as you move to a foreign country, you will experience cultural differences.			
	11	Unless government agencies do not usually fire employees, they can always retire from their jobs.			
	12	I suggest running the subway 24 hours a day that people who work at night can use it.			

Writing Practice

Translate the following into English by putting the given words and phrases in the right order.

- Khi chúng ta xem quảng cáo, chúng ta có thể nhân được nhiều thông tin về các sản phẩm khác nhau. (a lot of information / when we / we can get / about various products / watch commercials) Tôi sẽ không bao giờ từ bỏ cho đến khi tôi đạt được mục tiêu trong cuộc sống. (I will never / my goal / until / give up / I achieve / in life) Từ khi tôi ra đời, tôi chưa bao giờ rời tổ quốc tôi. (my home country / I was born / I have never left / since) Trong khi một số người thấy thoải mái khi tuân lệnh của người khác, một số người khác thì không. (others' orders / feel comfortable / whereas / in following / some people / others don't) Nếu ban ở chung phòng với ai đó, ban sẽ không có nhiều sư riêng tư. (you will / share a room / much privacy / not have / with someone / if you) Trừ phi công ty thanh toán nơ đúng han, nếu không nó có thể bị phá sản. (go bankrupt / a loan / a company / it may / unless / in time / pays back) Một số người tôn sùng vật chất đến nỗi họ nghĩ tiền có thể giải quyết bất cứ vấn để gì. (can resolve / so materialistic / money / some people are / that they think / any problem) Một khi ban quyết định lĩnh vực học thuật mà ban muốn theo đuổi, ban nên thảo luận điều đó với giáo viên của ban. (with your teacher / once you decide / that you want / you should discuss it / on a field of study / to pursue) Trước khi ban yêu cầu người khác giúp đỡ, ban nên cố gắng giải quyết vấn để của ban một mình đã. (to solve / before / you ask / alone / you should try / for others' help / your problem)
- 10 Ở thành phố, bạn có thể mua nhu yếu phẩm để dàng vì của hàng tiện lợi có ở khấp nơi. (everywhere / because / easily / in a city / buy necessities / convenience stores are / you can)

Us	ing the given words or phrases, translate the following into English.
1	Ước gi tôi không phải mặc đồng phục đi học. (1 wish)
2	Bạn không thể nào có bạn thân cho đến khi bạn xây dựng sự tin cậy, (until)
3	Thời gian trôi qua, nhưng sự suy thoái kinh tế thế giới dường như càng trở nên tổi tệ hơn. (economic recession: as
4	Nếu bạn bất tử, bạn có thể ăn bao nhiều đồ ăn vặt cũng được. (if: immortal)
5	Tôi cảm thấy tự tin phát biểu trước người khác chỉ khi tôi đã chuẩn bị sẵn sàng. (only when)
6	Nếu bạn trở thành một cư dân trong một cộng đồng, bạn nên tham gia vào một số hoạt động của cộng đồng.
7	Nếu bạn học với người khác, bạn có thể dễ dàng bị sao nhãng. (if; get distracted)
8	Chừng nào chúng ta có quyển tự do ngôn luận, chúng ta mới có thể tạo nên dư luận quần chúng. (as long as)
9	Chẳng bao lâu nữa chúng ta sẽ hết nước sạch vì chúng ta liên tục làm ô nhiễm sông và biển. (because; before long
10	Một số người ngu ngốc đến nỗi họ không nhận thức được thiên nhiên quan trọng như thế nào. (so ~ that ~)
11	Vì ngày nay sinh viên có một kỳ nghi hè dài nên họ có thể đi du lịch đến những đất nước khác. (since)
12	Nếu tôi la tổng thống, tôi sẽ đầu tư thêm vào giáo dục. (if: invest in)

Writing Challenge

Translate the following into English.

- 1 Nếu tôi sống ở một thành phố lớn, cuối tuần nào tôi cũng sẽ đi thăm một viện bảo tàng.
- 2 Người ta không biết giá tri của sức khỏe cho đến khi họ đánh mất nó.
- 3 Tôi thích mùa hè vì nó gợi lại những ký ức thời thơ ấu của tôi.
- 4 Trong khi hầu hết trẻ em đều thích tuyết, thì hầu hết người lớn đều ghét tuyết.
- 5 Nếu không có vũ khí hạt nhân và chủ nghĩa khủng bố, thế giới sẽ là nơi an toàn hơn nhiều.
- 6 Một khi bạn thành lập nhóm học tập với người khác, bạn nên tuần theo quy định của nhóm đó.
- 7 Phòng khi ban bị lạc ở nước ngoài, tốt hơn hết ban nên mang theo bản đồ của khu vực đó.
- 8 Nếu người ta suy nghĩ sâu hơn, họ sẽ hiểu rằng thể thao quan trong đối với thanh thiếu niên.
- 9 Một số người không quan tâm họ làm công việc gì miễn là họ kiếm được nhiều tiền.
- 10 Nếu cha me cứ giải quyết những vấn để mà con cái gây ra, con cái sẽ không thể học được tính trách nhiệm.
- 11 Thái độ lạc quan tốt cho sức khỏe tinh thần của ban vì nó bảo vệ ban khỏi bị phiên muôn.
- 12 Mặc dù số lương giáo viện được giáo dục tốt đạng tặng, sinh viên vẫn thấy thích du học.

B Complete the following paragraphs in English.

1 Ước gi tôi có thể sống ở một thị trấn nhỏ vi tôi muốn dành nhiều thời gian với láng giếng của tôi. Mặc dù tôi đã sống ở một chung cư trong một thành phố lớn được năm năm rồi, nhưng tôi thậm chí không biết ai sống ngay bên canh nhà mình.

Though I have been living in an apartment building in a big city for five years, I do not even know who lives next door to me.

2 Dù thắng hay thua, bạn cũng có thể rất vui khi bạn chơi một trò chơi với người khác. Trừ phi bạn đang thi đấu, nếu không thì không có lợi ích gi cho dù bạn giành thắng lợi. Và, nếu không có ích lợi hay bị phạt tiền, bạn sẽ không quan tâm đến kết quả mà chỉ cổ gắng được vui khi ban tham gia trò chơi.

Unless you are in a competition, there are no benefits even if you win the game. And, if there are no benefits or penalties, you will not care about the results but will try to have a good time while you are playing.

- 3 Từ khi thế giới bắt đầu công nghiệp hóa, con người đã hy sinh quá nhiều điều quan trọng. Một số ví dụ là nước sạch, động vật và rừng. Nếu con người tiếp tục tàn phá thiên nhiên, vào thế kỷ tới sẽ không còn tài nguyên thiên nhiên nữa Since the world started to industrialize, humans have sacrificed too many important things. Some examples are clean water, animals, and forests.
- 4 Nếu tôi có một miếng đất để sử dụng như mơ ước, tôi muốn xây một trại trẻ mổ côi. Trong khi hầu hết trẻ em đều có cha mẹ chăm sóc, một số trẻ không có cha mẹ hoặc nhà cửa để sống. Ước gì tôi có thể cho các em đó một ngôi nhà.
 If I had some land to use as I wished, I would like to build an orphanage.

I wish I could give a home to those children.

5 Tôi muốn thay đổi quy định của thư viện trường tôi để mọi người trong thị trấn của chúng tôi đều có thể sử dụng thư viện. Nếu mọi người có thể sử dụng thư viện trường, chúng tôi sẽ không phải xây một thư viện công cộng. Vì vày, chúng tôi có thể tiết kiệm được nhiều tiền.

I want to change my school library's rules so that everyone in our town can use the library.

As a result, we could save a lot of money.

6 Nếu chúng ta hiểu cuộc sống bằng chính trải nghiệm của chúng ta, chúng ta sẽ không biết được người khác nghĩ về cuộc sống khác biệt như thế nào. Mặc dù điều quan trọng là tự chúng ta phải trải nghiệm những điều khác nhau, nhưng chúng ta cũng nên hiểu cuộc sống có thể được trải nghiệm một cách khác biệt như thế nào.

Though it is important to experience various things by ourselves, we should also understand how life can be experienced differently.

PART



Essential TOEFL® Collocations

Collocation is the way words combine with other words to produce natural-sounding speech and writing. In English, every written or spoken expression is more or less related to collocation, and millions of word combinations are highly predictable to native speakers of English. Therefore, knowing frequently used collocations is essential for natural, accurate English. By learning common TOEFL® collocations in this part, you will be able to write your ideas fluently and precisely.

- *Unit 6 School & Education
- Unit 7 Family & Society
- Unit 8 Economy & Business
- Unit 9 Living & Thinking
- Unit 10 Culture & Leisure
- Unit 11 Health & Environment
- Unit 12 Science & Technology



School & Education

1 a	field	of	study	
-----	-------	----	-------	--

2 a secondary school

3 assign homework to someone

4 attend a summer camp

5 attend classes

6 attend college/university

7 be competent in

8 be/get involved in outdoor activities

9 be required to-V

10 begin formal education

một lĩnh vực học tập/nghiên cứu

một trường trung học

phân công bài tấp về nhà cho (ai)

tham dự trại hè

đến lớp

đi học đại học

có đủ khả năng/trình độ, thạo, giỏi

tham gia các hoạt động ngoài trời

được yêu cầu làm gì

bắt đầu việc giáo dục bài bản/chính thức

build/establish a school

12 career preparation

13 compulsory subjects

14 develop expertise in

15 earn a credit

16 expand one's knowledge

17 extracurricular activities

18 face a problem

19 feel peer pressure

20 form a study group

thành lập trường

chuẩn bị cho nghề nghiệp

những môn học bắt buộc

phát triển chuyên môn ở/trong

lấy được một chứng chỉ

mở rộng kiến thức của mình

các hoat đông ngoại khóa

đương đầu với một vấn đề

cảm thấy áp lực của ban đồng trang lứa

lập một nhóm học tập

gain knowledge from

gain updated information

get a good education

24 get a good grade

give someone a prize for

26 go through puberty

go to a private school

28 graduate from school

29 have a choice of

có được kiến thức từ

có được thông tin cập nhật

nhận được sư giáo dục tốt

nhân được điểm cao

tăng (ai) giải thưởng về

đi qua tuổi dây thì

đi học trường tư

tốt nghiệp

có sư/quyền lưa chon

	30	have a diploma in	có bằng đại học về
	31	have a discussion about	có cuộc thảo luận về
	32	have a strong curiosity about	rất muốn biết về
	33	have a strong impact on	có tác động mạnh mẽ đối với
	34	have the opportunity to-V	có cơ hội để làm gì
	35	increase one's potential capability	nâng cao khả năng tiềm tàng của mình
	36	increase the education budget	tăng ngân sách giáo dục
	37	learn by oneself	tự học
	38	learn by V-ing	học bằng cách làm gì
	39	lecture in class	thuyết trình trong lớp
	40	live in a dormitory	sống trong ký túc xá
	41	major in	học chuyên ngành về
	42	make a change in	tạo ra sự thay đổi ở/trong
	43	offer an educational opportunity	đưa ra/cung cấp một cơ hội giáo dục
	44	optional subjects	các môn học tùy chọn
	45	organize one's thoughts	sắp xếp suy nghĩ của mình
	46	participate in a class discussion	tham gia vào buổi thảo luận của lớp
	47	prevent school violence	ngăn chặn bạo lực trong trường học
	48	promote creative thinking	thúc đẩy tư duy sáng tạo
	49	pursue one's individual interest	theo đuổi mối quan tâm cá nhân của mình
	50	put a priority on	đặt ưu tiên lên
t			
	51	real life experience	kinh nghiệm cuộc sống thật
	52	share a room with someone	sống chung phòng với (ai)
	53	share ideas with someone	có chung/chia sẻ ý tưởng với (ai)
	54	study abroad	du học
	55	study with a group	học nhóm
	56	take an orientation course for	theo khóa học hướng nghiệp về
	57	use the school facilities	sử dụng các cơ sở vật chất của trường
	58	wear a school uniform	mặc đồng phục đi học
	59	with the help of	với sự giúp đỡ của
	60	work as a team	hoạt động như một đội

Check-Up

Match the words or phrases on the left with the best collocates on the right.

Basic Drill A a credit expand . competent in lecture one's knowledge earn as a team work preparation career in class be abroad share expertise in form ideas with someone attend a study group a secondary study a summer camp school develop

- mở rộng kiến thức của mình
- 2 thuyết trình trong lớp
- 3 có đủ khả năng/trình độ, thạo, giỏi
- 4 hoạt động như một đội
- 5 chuẩn bi cho nghề nghiệp
- 6 lấy được một chứng chỉ
- 7 lập nhóm học tập
- 8 có chung ý tưởng với (ai)
- 9 một trường trung học
- 10 du hoc
- 11 tham dự trại hè
- 12 phát triển chuyên môn ở/trong

expand one's knowledge

Match the words or phrases on the left with the best collocates on the right.

Basic Drill B organize one's thoughts experience put go through a priority on a good grade real life .--formal education begin puberty get school violence pursue offer homework to someone one's individual interest learn an educational opportunity prevent knowledge from assign gain by oneself

1	kinh nghiệm cuộc sống thật	real life experience
2	đi qua tuổi dậy thì	
3	đặt ưu tiên lên	
4	sắp xếp suy nghĩ của mình	
5	bắt đầu việc giáo dục bài bản/chính thức	
6	nhận được điểm cao	
7	đưa ra một cơ hội giáo dục	
8	ngăn chặn bạo lực trong trường học	
9	tự học	
10	có được kiến thức từ	

11 phân công bài tập về nhà cho (ai)

theo đuổi mối quan tâm cá nhân của mình

12

Writing Practice

A	Со	mplete the following by filling in the blanks with the appropriate collocations.
	1	Bạn đồng trang lửa có thể có tác động mạnh mẽ đối với thành tích học tập ở trường của thiếu niên. Peers can a teenager's performance in his/her studies at school.
	2	Tôi nghĩ tốt hơn là nên hoạt động như một đội để giành thắng lợi trong cuộc thi này. I thìnk it is better to to win the competition.
	3	Nếu bạn sống chung phòng với ai, bạn có thể hiểu được tính cách của người đó trong một thời gian ngắn. If you someone, you can learn about his/her personality in a sho period of time.
	4	Nếu chúng ta có thể ngăn chặn bạo lực trong trường học, có thể tỷ lệ tội phạm vị thành niên cũng sẽ giảm. If we can, it is expected that the juvenile crime rate will decrease as well
	5	Chịu trách nhiệm cho hành vi của chính bạn là bước đầu tiên để tạo ra sự thay đổi trong cuộc sống của bạn. Taking responsibility for your own behavior will be the first step to your life.
	6	Tự học có thể mất nhiều thời gian hơn là được ai đó dạy. may take a longer time than being taught by someone.
	7	Với sự giúp đỡ của công nghệ hiện đại, một số sinh viên đại học có thể học ở nhà. modern technology, some college students take classes at home.
	8	Chúng ta nên cung cấp cơ hội giáo dục cho mọi thành viên trong xã hội. We should to every member of our society.
	9	Thư viện giúp sinh viên có được thông tin cập nhật về nhiều chủ để khác nhau. Libraries enable students to about a variety of topics.
	10	Trừ phi bạn đương đầu với vấn để của mình, nếu không bạn không thể giải quyết được nó. Unless you, you cannot solve it.
	11	Theo ý kiến của tôi, đọc sách là cách tốt nhất để mở rộng kiến thức của bạn. In my opinion, reading books is the best way to
	12	Giáo viên nên động viên sinh viên tích cực tham gia các hoạt động ngoài trời để phát triển sức khỏe thể chất.

actively for their physical

Teachers should encourage their students to

development.

В	Tra	anslate the following into English by putting the given words and phrases in the right order.
	1	Tôi muốn học chuyên ngành sinh vật ở trường đại học. (major in / I want to / at university / biology)
	2	Giáo viên cung cấp tài liệu của giờ học cho sinh viên nếu cấn thiết. (class materials / if necessary / teachers provide / for their students)
	3	$\tilde{\mathbb{O}}$ trường trung học, tôi đã tham gia trại hè và làm bạn với nhiều người. (I attended / in middle school / and made many friends / a summer camp)
	4	Nhiều trường công và trường tư yêu cấu học sinh mặc đồng phục đi học. (require students / to wear / many public and private schools / school uniforms)
	5	Học nhóm thường không hiệu quả bằng học một mình. (studying by oneself / is often / studying with a group / not as efficient as)
	6	Nếu bạn sống trong ký túc xá, bạn có thể làm quen với những người xuất thân từ các nến tảng văn hóa khác. (you can get / in a dormitory / to know people / if you live / from other cultural backgrounds)
	7	Trẻ em thường rất muốn biết về những điều mà trước đó chúng chưa bao giờ thấy. (a strong curiosity / children usually have / they have not seen before / about things)
	8	Theo ý kiến của tôi, bắt đầu việc giáo dục bài bản lúc 6 tuổi thì quá sớm. (at the age of 6 / formal education / is too early / in my opinion / to begin)
	9	Tôi cho rằng hầu hết các môn học tùy chọn đều quan trọng như các môn học bắt buộc. (compulsory subjects / I believe / are as important as / most optional subjects)
	10	Nhiều công ty yêu cầu nhân viên phải thành thạo vi tính.

Writing Challenge

Translate the following into English.

1	Tất cả giáo viên và sinh viên đều phải tham gia nhiệt tình vào buổi tháo luận của lớp học.
2	Bố mẹ phải mất nhiều tiền để cho con cái đi du học.
3	Ngoài việc theo đuổi kiến thức, người ta cũng đi học đại học để chuẩn bị cho nghề nghiệp.
4	Tất cả sinh viên đều phải có cơ hội tham gia các hoạt động ngoài trời.
5	Trường học cung cấp cho học sinh cơ hội nâng cao khả năng tiểm tàng của mình.
6	Mục đích viết bản thu hoạch về một cuốn sách là để chia sẻ ý kiến với người khác về cuốn sách bạn đã đọc
7	Khi bạn viết, bạn sẽ có thể sắp xếp suy nghĩ của mình tốt hơn.
8	Đôi khi người ta học bằng cách mắc sai lầm.
9	Một số học sinh không muốn đi học vì chúng cảm thấy chịu áp lực của bạn bè đồng trang lửa.
10	Tôi cho rằng sinh viên phải đọc mỗi tuần một cuốn sách.

11	Đế thúc đẩy tư duy sáng tạo, một số người thám hiểm tự nhiên.
12	Kinh nghiệm cuộc sống thật cũng quan trọng như kiến thức từ trường học.
13	Cuộc sống học đường bao gồm không những việc đến lớp mà còn cả việc hòa hợp với các sinh viên khác.
14	Chính phủ nên tăng ngân sách giáo dục để trường nào cũng có thể có thư viện riêng của mình.
15	Mọi người đều có quyển lựa chọn sống hoặc chết.
16	Nếu chúng ta có một kỳ nghi hè dài, chúng ta có thể sử dụng nó để phát triển chuyên môn ở một lĩnh vực nào đó.
17	Theo ý kiến của tôi, mọi giáo viên tiểu học đều phải có bằng đại học về tâm lý học.
18	Tôi thích xem tivi hơn đọc sách vì tôi có thể tiếp thu được kiến thức từ tivi dễ hơn từ sách.
19	Một khi bạn lập nhóm học tập với người khác, bạn nên tuân theo các quy định của nhóm.
20	Một số người phạm tội vì họ đặt ưu tiên lên lợi ích cá nhân.

7 Family & Society

1	agree to obey	đồng ý vâng lời/tuân theo
2	be celebrated for	được ca tụng vì
3	be committed to	tận tụy với, hết lòng với
4	be emotionally attached to	gắn bó tình cảm với
5	be hospitable to	hiếu khách với
6	be in need of help	cần được giúp đỡ
7	be isolated from	bị cách ly khỏi
8	become a resident of	trở thành cư dân của
9	benefit from	được lợi từ
10	build a monument to	xây đài kỷ niệm cho
11	build social skills	xây dựng các kỹ năng xã hội
12	build up trust	xây dựng lòng tin
13	can afford to-V	có đủ tiền để làm gì
14	do something for a living	làm (gì) để kiếm sống
15	drop in at a shopping center	ghé vào một trung tâm mua sắm
16	feel an attraction to	cảm thấy bị lôi cuốn bởi
17	feel connected	cảm thấy được liên kết
18	feel secure	cảm thấy yên tâm/an toàn
19	follow in one's footsteps	theo bước chân ai
20	form public opinion	tạo dư luận quần chúng
21	form an organization	thành lập một tổ chức
22	gain the support of	
23	get along with	giành được sự ủng hộ của
24	have a close relationship with	hòa hợp với
25	have a close relationship with	có quan hệ chặt chẽ với
26	have a tendency to-V	có ý thức cộng đồng
20	nave a tendency to-v	có khuynh hướng làm gì

có tiêu chuẩn cao, đặt ky vọng cải thiện giao thông công cộng

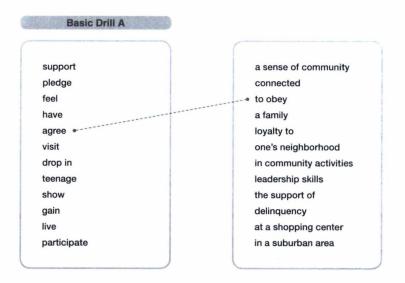
have high standards

improve public transportation

29	It is generally agreed that ~	Người ta thường đồng ý rằng ~
30	keep an eye on	trông chừng
31	keep something in mind	nghĩ (điểu gì) trong đầu
32	keep up with	theo kip
33	live in a suburban area	sống ở một khu vực ngoại ô
34	make a contribution to	đóng góp cho
35	make an important decision for	đưa ra một quyết định quan trọng cho
36	participate in community activities	tham gia vào các hoạt động của cộng đồng
37	pass on one's values to	truyền lại giá trị của mình cho
38	pledge loyalty to	cam kết trung thành với
39	practice a religion	theo một tôn giáo
40	put down roots	cắm rễ, định cư lâu dài
41	remind someone of something	nhắc (ai) nhớ đến (cái gì)
42	resolve a problem	giải quyết một vấn đề
43	show leadership skills	cho thấy những kỹ năng lãnh đạo
44	show respect to	thể hiện lòng kính trọng đối với
45	support a family	nuôi một gia đình
46	teenage delinquency	sự phạm pháp ở lứa tuổi vị thành niên
47	treat someone as something	đối xử với (ai) như là (gì đó)
48	use public transportation	sử dụng giao thông công cộng
49	visit one's neighborhood	đi thăm láng giềng của mình
, 50	without V-ing	không làm gì

Check-Up

Match the words or phrases on the left with the best collocates on the right.



1.	đồng ý vâng lời	agree to obey
2	nuôi một gia đình	
3	có ý thức cộng đồng	
4	đi thăm láng giềng của mình	
5	cảm thấy được liên kết	
6	cam kết trung thành với	
7	cho thấy những kỹ năng lãnh đạo	
8	sống trong một khu vực ngoại ô	
9	ghé vào một trung tâm mua sắm	
10	giành được sự ủng hộ của	
11	tham gia vào các hoạt động của cộng đồng	
12	sự phạm pháp ở lứa tuổi vị thành niên	

Match the words or phrases on the left with the best collocates on the right.

Basic Drill B respect to become public transportation practice a particular religion improve .-a monument to build in need of help be a resident of show in one's footsteps be a contribution to make an organization form committed to build social skills be emotionally attached to follow

1	cải thiện giao thông công cộng	improve public transportation
2	xây đài kỷ niệm cho	
3	trở thành cư dân của	
4	thể hiện lòng kính trọng đối với	
5	cần được giúp đỡ	
6	theo một tôn giáo cụ thể	
7	đóng góp cho	
8	theo bước chân ai	
9	gắn bó tình cảm với	
10	tận tụy với	
11	thành lập một tổ chức	

xây dựng các kỹ năng xã hội

12

Writing Practice

1	Một số lăng giếng không hòa hợp với nhau. Some neighbors do not each other.	
2	Nếu bạn có chủ định tốt, bạn không cẩn nhiều tiến để thành lập một tổ chức. If you have good intentions, you do not need a lot of money to	
3	Người ta cần có công việc không những để kiếm tiền mà còn để đóng góp cho xã hội. A person needs to have a job not only to earn money but also to society	į.
4	Đửa trẻ hư hồng có khuynh hướng phụ thuộc vào người khác. A spoiled child depend on others.	
5	$Người \ châu \ \acute{A} \ thường có ý thức cộng đồng hơn người phương Tây.$ $ Asians \ usually \qquad \qquad than \ Westerners.$	
6	Nhân viên cảnh sát làm việc vất và để giúp cho công dân cảm thấy an toàn. Police officers work very hard to make citizens .	
7	Trẻ em có khuynh hướng theo bước chân cha hoặc mẹ, người có cùng giới tính với mình. Children tend to	
8	Ngày nay, thanh niên không biết cách thể hiện lòng kính trọng đối với người lớn tuổi. These days, young people do not know how to the elderly.	
9	Ở thành phố, sử dụng giao thông công cộng thì có hiệu quả về thời gian hơn lái xe hơi. In a city, it is more time-efficient to than to drive a car.	
10	Giáo viên nên khuyên sinh viên tham gia vào các hoạt động của cộng đồng. Teachers should recommend their students to	
11	Nếu bố mẹ liên tục đưa ra những quyết định quan trọng cho con cái, bọn trẻ có thể sẽ không học được tính trách If parents keep their children, the children may not be able to learn responsibility.	
12	Tối thích mùa hệ hơn mùa đồng ví mùa hệ nhắc tối nhớ đến một số kỳ ức thời thơ ấu của tối. I prefer summer to winter since summer some memories from my childhood.	r

A Complete the following by filling in the blanks with the appropriate collocations.

Tra	Translate the following into English by putting the given words and phrases in the right order.		
1	Bố mẹ cổ gắng truyền lại những giá trị của minh cho con cái. (to pass on / to their children / their values / parents try)		
2	Để có một người bạn thân, bạn phải xây dựng lòng tin trước đã. (a good friend/you have to/in order to make/build up trust first)		
3	Tôi tin rằng không ai muốn bị cách ly khỏi người khác. (from others / nobody wants / I believe / to be isolated)		
4	Cho dù không đồng ý với các quy định của bố mẹ, con cái phải đồng ý tuân theo. (children should agree / even if / their parents' rules / they disagree with / to obey them)		
5	Chính phủ nên sử dụng lợi tức của mình cho những người cấn được giúp đỡ. (the government should use / who are in need of help / for those people / its revenues)		
6	Tôi muốn có việc làm để tôi có thể có đủ tiến mua một chiếc xe hơi. (buy a car / 1 want to / afford to / get a job / 1 can / so that)		
7	Để giải quyết một vấn để, bạn phải hiểu vấn để đó trước đầ. (understand the problem first / in order to / you have to / resolve a problem)		
8	Người ta bị nghiện Internet vì họ muốn cầm thấy được liên kết với người khác. (feel connected / to the Internet / people get addicted / because they want to / with others)		
9	Sình viên phải nghĩ trong đầu rằng mơ ước của mình quan trọng hơn bất cứ điều gì khác. (keep it in mind / more important / students have to / that their dreams are / than anything else)		
10	Người ta thường đồng ý rằng người Hàn Quốc không thích phát biểu ở nơi công cộng, (speak in public / do not like to / it is generally agreed that / Korean people)		

B

Writing Challenge

Translate the following into English.

1	Sinh viên phải quyết định sẽ làm gì để kiểm sống trong tương lai trước khi họ tốt nghiệp.
2	Thật khó để nuôi gia đình mà bản thân không chịu những hy sinh.
3	Một khi bạn hứa, bạn nên hết lòng giữ lời hứa đó.
4	Trẻ em đối xử với thú nuôi như là đổ chơi.
5	Vì chúng ta có quyển tự do ngôn luận, chúng ta có thể tạo dư luận quần chúng cho dù chúng ta bao nhiều tuổi đi nữa.
6	Bố mẹ đặt kỳ vọng vào con cái vì họ thương yêu chúng.
7	Là một cách cải thiện giao thông công cộng, tôi để xuất nên cho tàu điện ngắm hoạt động 24 tiếng mỗi ngày
8	Một số người nói rằng sự phạm pháp của tuổi vị thành niên cần thiết cho sự phát triển tinh thần của thanh thiếu niên
9	Tôi muốn có quan hệ chặt chẽ với tất cả các bạn cùng lớp của tôi.
10	Trong văn hóa Hàn Quốc, người ta thường không xây đài kỷ niệm cho một người còn sống.

11	Trẻ em có tính phụ thuộc thường quá gắn bó tình cảm với bố mẹ.
12	Nhiệm vụ của chúng ta là truyền lại những giá trị tốt đẹp của chúng ta cho con cái.
13	Để theo một tôn giáo cụ thể, bạn phải tuần theo những quy định của tôn giáo đó từ đấy lòng bạn.
14	Bạn không thể nào là một giáo viên giỏi cho đến khi bạn cho sinh viên thấy những kỹ năng lãnh đạo.
15	Theo quan điểm của tôi, người ta phải sống ở nhiều nơi khác nhau trước khi định cư lâu dài ở một chỗ.
16	Người ta có khuynh hướng hiếu khách với một thành viên trong nhóm.
17	Nếu bạn sống ở một khu vực ngoại ô, bạn sẽ có nhiều cơ hội quen biết láng giếng của bạn.
18	Trẻ em thường xây dựng các kỹ năng xã hội lắn đầu tiên ở trường mẫu giáo.
19	Trước khi cố gắng giành được sự ủng hộ của gia đình bạn, bạn nên cố gắng làm mà không cắn đến sự giúp đỡ của họ.
20	Nếu bạn đi thâm láng giếng của một người bạn, bạn có thể hiểu người bạn đó hơn.

Economy & Business

1	a defective product	một sản phẩm bị lỗi
2	a job description	một bản mô tả công việc
3	an increase in population	sự gia tăng dân số
4	be in great demand	có nhu cầu cao
5	be on the market	đang được bán
6	be self-employed/one's own boss	làm việc độc lập, tự làm chủ
7	be unwilling to-V	không sẵn lòng làm gi
8	be willing to-V	sẵn lòng làm gì
9	boost the economy	thúc đẩy nền kinh tế
10	boss someone around	chỉ huy/ra lệnh cho (ai) một cách hống hách
	hulld and a second	
11	build one's career	xây dựng sự nghiệp của mình
12	call in late	gọi điện báo bị trễ
13	call in sick	gọi điện báo ốm
14	cannot afford to-V	không có đủ tiền để làm gì
15	charge higher prices	tính giá cao hơn
16	climb the corporate ladder	leo lên bậc thang (địa vị) của công ty
17	compensate for	bổi thường cho
18	complain in writing/person	viết thư∕đích thân than phiền
19	develop interpersonal skills	phát triển những kỹ năng giao tế
20	discourage productivity	làm giảm năng suất
21	earn money	kiếm tiền
22	encourage competition	khuyến khích canh tranh
23	enter the workforce	gia nhập lực lương lao đồng
24	feel a sense of accomplishment	cảm nhân được cảm giác thành công
25	find employment	tìm việc
26	get a promotion	được để bạt
27	get a refund on	nhân tiến bồi hoàn cho

được trả lương theo giơ/ngày/tuần

bị phá sản

28

29

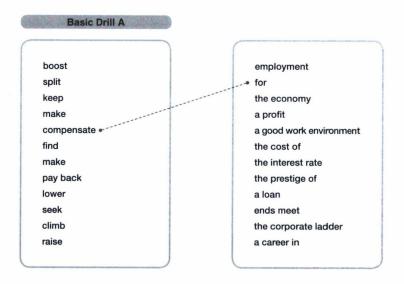
get paid by the hour/day/week

go bankrupt

30	have a market share of ~	có thị phần của ~
31	have a positive attitude towards	có thái độ tích cực đối với
32	in the line of duty	theo chính sách thuế
33	invest in	đầu tư vào
34	keep a good work environment	giữ một môi trường làm việc tốt
35	leave one's job	rời bỏ công việc của mình
36	lower the interest rate	hạ lãi suất xuống
37	make a budget for	dự toán ngân sách cho
38	make a complaint about	than phiền về
39	make a living	kiếm sống
40	make a profit	có lãi, sinh lãi
41	make ends meet	đáp ứng đủ nhu cầu
42	make up a loss	đền bù cho tổn thất/thua lỗ
43	meet the qualifications	đáp ứng các tiêu chuẩn
44	minimize one's cost of living	tối thiểu hóa chi phí cuộc sống của mình
45	obtain an entry-level position	nhận được công việc lần đầu tiên
46	overcome an economic recession	vượt qua cuộc suy thoái kinh tế
47	pay back a loan	thanh toán tiền nợ
48	pay taxes	nộp tiền thuế
49	raise the prestige of	nâng cao uy tín của
50	retire from one's job	rút lui khỏi công việc của mình
į		
51	return corporate profits to society	hoàn trả tiền lãi của công ty cho xã hội
52	seek a career in	tìm kiếm sự nghiệp ở
53	split the cost of	chia đôi chi phí của
54	start (up) a business	khởi đầu một doanh nghiệp
55	submit one's résumé	nộp sơ yếu lý lịch của mình
56	transfer someone to another department	thuyên chuyển (ai) qua phòng/ban khác
57	understand the market principle	hiểu nguyên tắc thị trường
58	urge someone to-V	thúc giục (ai) làm gì
59	work part-time	làm việc bán thời gian
60	work overtime	làm việc thêm giờ

Check-Up

Match the words or phrases on the left with the best collocates on the right.



1	bồi thường cho	compensate for
2	chia đôi chi phí của	
3	có lãi, sinh lãi	
4	tìm việc	
5	thúc đẩy nền kinh tế	
6	giữ một môi trường làm việc tốt	
7	thanh toán tiền nợ	
8	leo lên bậc thang (địa vị) của công ty	
9	đáp ứng đủ nhu cầu	
10	hạ lãi suất xuống	
11	tìm kiếm sự nghiệp ở	

12

nâng cao uy tín của

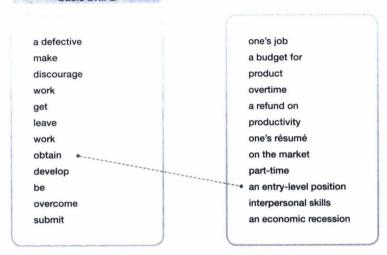
Match the words or phrases on the left with the best collocates on the right.

Basic Drill B

11

12

vượt qua cuộc suy thoái kinh tế nộp sơ yếu lý lịch của mình



obtain an entry-level position 1 nhận được công việc lần đầu tiên làm giảm năng suất 2 rời bỏ công việc của mình 3 một sản phẩm bị lỗi 4 làm việc thêm giờ 5 nhân tiền bồi hoàn về 6 7 dự toán ngân sách cho 8 phát triển những kỹ năng giao tế 9 đang được bản làm việc bán thời gian 10

Complete the following by filling in the blanks with the appropriate collocations.

1	Người ta nên có một thái độ tích cực đối với việc phát triển đẩy đủ tiềm năng của mình.
	People should fulfilling their potential.
2	Khi người ta nhận được công việc lần đầu tiên, chắc chắn họ có nhiều điều phải học hỏi.
	When a person, he or she must have a lot of things to learn.
3	Một người giám sát giỏi biết cách khuyến khích sự cạnh tranh ở các nhân viên.
	A good supervisor knows how to among employees.
4	Đôi khi nhân viên phải làm việc thêm giờ mà không được trả lương thêm.
	Employees sometimes have to without extra payment.
5	Khi bạn muốn rời bỏ công việc của mình, bạn phải thông báo trước cho ông chủ của bạn.
	When you want to , you should notify your employer in advance.
6	Là một cách đền bù cho thua lỗ, các công ty cho nhiều nhân viên tạm nghỉ việc.
	As a way to, companies have laid off many of their employees.
7	Được để bạt ở một công ty lớn cũng khó như tìm được một công việc mới.
	at a large company is as difficult as finding a new job.
8	Chính phủ của chúng ta không có đủ tiền để giúp đỡ tất cả người nghèo trong đất nước chúng ta.
	Our government help all the poor in our country.
9	Hiện nay, ngày càng có nhiều công ty hoàn trả tiền lãi công ty cho xã hội.
	More and more companies are today.
10	Bạn phải giữ giấy biên nhận khi bạn mua cái gì đó để sau này bạn có thể nhận tiền bổi hoàn cho nó.
	You have to keep the receipt when you buy something so that you can it ater
11	Vì Hàn Quốc là một đất nước thiếu nước ngọt, chính phủ tính tiền nước với giá cao hơn các đất nước khác.
	As Korea is a water-deficient country, the government on water than other countries.
12	Nếu các ngân hàng hạ lãi suất cho vay thể chấp xuống, nhiều người sẽ có thể mua được nhà riêng hơn.
	If banks for mortgages, more people will be able to have their own houses.

B	Tra	$ Translate \ the \ following \ into \ English \ by \ putting \ the \ given \ words \ and \ phrases \ in \ the \ right \ order. $		
	1	Khi bạn xin việc, bạn phải nộp sơ yếu lý lịch. (you have / for a job / to submit / when you apply / your résumé)		
	2	Ngay cả rác cũng là một yếu tố quan trọng để sinh lãi ở đất nước đó. (to make a profit / even garbage is / in the country / an important element)		
	3	Không dễ gì để người ta hy sinh bắn thân. (for people / sacrifice themselves / to be willing to / it is not easy)		
	4	Chất lượng của sản phẩm nâng cao uy tín của công ty chế tạo sản phẩm đó. (the prestige of the company / the quality of a product / raises / which made the product)		
	5	Để có được vị trí cao trong một công ty, bạn phải phát triển những kỹ năng giao tế. (get a high position / in a company / interpersonal skills / in order to / you should develop)		
	6	Nhiều sinh viên cố gắng giành cương vị giáo sinh để xây dựng sự nghiệp của mình khi họ đang còn học đại học. (to get internships / while they are / many students try / to build their careers / in college)		
	7	Trước khi nộp đơn xin việc, bạn nên biết chắc rằng bạn có đáp ứng các tiêu chuẩn của vị trí công việc đó không. (of the job position / before applying for a job / if you meet the qualifications / you should make sure)		
	8	Bạn phải gọi điện báo bị trễ trong trường hợp bạn không thể đi làm đúng giờ. (on time / you have to / you cannot / call in late / in case / go to work)		
	9	Trước khi chi tiển vào việc gì, các công ty đều dự toán ngắn sách cho việc đó. (on something / companies make / before spending money / a budget for it)		
	10	Ngày nay máy vi tính đang có nhu cấu cao, vì vậy chúng ta có thể thấy những đoạn phim quảng cáo máy vi tính		

(in great demand / on TV very often / so we can see / these days / computers are / computer commercials)

trên tivi rất thường xuyên.

Writing Challenge

Translate the following into English.

1	Điều quan trọng là phải hiểu nguyên tắc thị trường để thành công ở một công việc kinh doanh.		
2	Một số công ty không bao giờ sa thải nhân viên nhưng cho phép họ rút lui khỏi công việc của mình.		
3	Lãi suất là một trong những nhân tố quan trọng để thúc đẩy nền kinh tế.		
4	Nếu một công ty không có đủ tiền để thanh toán tiền nợ, kết cục là nó có thể bị phá sản.		
5	Giữ một môi trường làm việc tốt là điều thiết yếu để tăng năng suất.		
6	Nếu bạn muốn thuê một người ở phòng của bạn, bạn phải giải thích bản mô tả công việc.		
7	Một số người phải làm việc chăm chỉ để kiếm sống.		
8	Một trong những khía cạnh tốt nhất khi có công việc là kiếm tiền.		
9	Trường công sẽ thiếu thu nhập nếu chúng ta không nộp tiền thuế.		
10	Bạn phải cạnh tranh với người khác để leo lên bậc thang của công ty.		

11	Trong một dự án nhóm, bạn có thể cảm nhận được cảm giác thành công và chia sẽ cảm giác đó với người khác.
12	Không ai muốn có một giám đốc ra lệnh cho người khác một cách hống hách.
13	Bạn phải tối thiếu hóa chi phí cuộc sống của mình để dành dụm tiền cho tương lai.
14	Viết thư than phiền thì hiệu quả hơn là đích thân/trực tiếp than phiền.
15	Khi hai công ty cùng làm việc với nhau, họ có thể chia đôi chi phí sản xuất.
16	Tôi thích được trả lương theo giờ hơn trả lương theo ngày bởi vì công việc của tôi luôn đời hỏi tôi làm việc thêm giờ
17	Cần phải có nỗ lực của mọi người để vượt qua cuộc suy thoái kinh tế.
18	Nếu tuần nào bạn cũng gọi điện báo ốm, sẽ không có ai tin bạn.
19	Ngày nay, nhiều người muốn được tự làm chủ.
20	Công ty không thể thúc ép nhân viên cổng hiến toàn bộ cuộc đời mình cho công ty.



Living & Thinking

a passing ceremony

adapt to a situation

after careful thought

have a taste in/for

increase one's quality of life

have trust in

hone a skill

	artor ourorar triougint	sau kili suy ligili cali tilali
1	as a token of	là dấu hiệu/biểu hiện của
i	assume responsibility	nhận trách nhiệm
5	be beneficial to	có lợi cho
7	be confident in	tin vào
3	be critical of	chỉ trích, phê phán
9	be flexible in	linh động trong
10	be responsible for	chịu trách nhiệm về
1	behave in a different way	cư xử một cách khác biệt
2	break a bad habit	từ bỏ một thói quen xấu
3	do something as a routine	làm (gì) theo thói quen
4	endure hardship	chịu đựng gian khổ
15	get into trouble	lâm/dính vào rắc rối
6	get stressed out	bị căng thẳng
7	go on a shopping spree	đi mua sắm lu bù
8	harm a friendship	làm hại tình bạn
9	have a workout	tập thể dục
20	have common sense	có sự xét đoán tốt
1	have a sense of humor	có khiểu hài hước
2	have a sociable character	có tính cách chan hòa
3	have an optimistic/a pessimistic attitude	có thái độ lạc quan/bi quan
4	have nothing/much/little to do with	không có/có nhiều/hầu như không liên quan đ
5	have regrets about	hối tiếc về

chuyên nhất thời

có thị hiểu về

có lòng tin vào

rên luyện một kỹ năng

năng cao chất lương cuộc sông của minh

thích nghi với một tình huống

sau khi suy nghĩ cấn thân

30	judge someone/something by something	xét đoán (ai/cái gì) bằng/qua (điều gì)
31	keep a secret	giữ bi mật
32	live by a rule	sống theo nguyên tắc
33	live one's own life	sống cuộc sống của chính mình
34	look down on	coi thường
35	look up to	kính trọng
36	make a careful decision	đưa ra một quyết định thận trọng/cẩn thận
37	make a good/bad impression on	tạo được ấn tượng tốt/xấu đối với
38	make a mistake/an error	phạm sai lầm/lỗi
39	move to a new place	chuyển đến một chỗ ở mới
40	plan ahead	lập kế hoạch trước
41	provide good nutrition for	cung cấp chất dinh dưỡng cho
42	put up with	chịu đựng
43	reach a turning point	đến được bước ngoặt quyết định
44	relieve one's stress	giảm sự căng thẳng của mình
45	save money for a rainy day	dành dụm tiền cho lúc khó khăn
46	set a goal	đặt ra một mục tiêu
47	set one's priorities	sắp xếp những điều/việc ưu tiên
48	slow down	làm chậm lại
49	stay out of trouble	tránh khỏi rắc rối
50	stay up late	thức khuya
1	- ff-i along domination	1: 1. 1. 1
51	suffer sleep deprivation take the risk of	chịu đựng chứng mất ngủ liều
52	take action	
53		hành động
54	take advantage of	lợi dụng
55	take a rest	nghi ngơi
56	take medicine	uống thuốc
57	take one's side	theo phe ai đó, đứng về phía ai đó
58	take one's time	thư thả
59	take the initiative to-V	khởi xướng làm gì
60	tell the truth	nổi thật

O Check-Up

Match the words or phrases on the left with the best collocates on the right.

Basic Drill A relieve regrets about harm . one's stress take medicine break a bad habit adapt a friendship have to a situation set a skill suffer to a new place endure sleep deprivation make hardship hone a careful decision move a goal

1	làm hại tình bạn	harm a friendship
2	thích nghi với một tình huống	
3	uống thuốc	
4	giảm sự căng thẳng của mình	
5	từ bỏ một thói quen xấu	
6	hối tiếc về	
7	chịu đựng chứng mất ngủ	
8	rèn luyện một kỹ năng	
9	chịu đựng gian khổ	
10	chuyển đến một chỗ ở mới	
11	đưa ra một quyết định thận trọng	

12

đặt ra một mục tiêu

Match the words or phrases on the left with the best collocates on the right.

Basic Drill B one's priorities live in a different way have a workout set behave . the truth by a rule harm a friendship tell . ceremony take do good nutrition for common sense reach an impulsive act have one's side a passing provide a turning point

1	nói thật	tell the truth
2	sắp xếp những điều ưu tiên	
3	cư xử một cách khác biệt	
4	sống theo nguyên tắc	
5	tập thể dục	
6	làm hại tình bạn	
7	cung cấp chất dinh dưỡng cho	
8	đến được bước ngoặt quyết định	
9	hành động một cách hấp tấp	
10	có sự xét đoán tốt	
11	theo phe ai đó, đứng về phía ai đó	
12	chuyên nhất thời	

Writing Practice

Complete the following by filling in the blanks with the appropriate collocations.

1	Chúng ta nên lập kế hoạch trước khi xài tiền.
	We should before spending money.
2	Một số người đi mua sắm lu bù khi họ bị căng thẳng.
	Some people when they .
3	Chúng ta không nên lợi dụng điểm yếu của người khác để đạt được mục đích của chúng ta.
	We should not others' weaknesses in order to achieve our goals.
4	Trẻ em nên kính trọng cha mẹ.
	Children should their parents.
5	Hy vọng giúp chúng ta chịu đựng gian khổ trong cuộc sống của chúng ta.
	Hope makes us in our lives.
6	Thiếu niên thường dính vào rắc rối vì chúng không nghĩ đến hậu quả.
	Teenagers often because they do not think of the consequences.
7	Nếu bạn hành động sau khi suy nghĩ cẩn thận, bạn sẽ thành công trong các kế hoạch của mình.
	If you act, you will succeed in your plans.
8	Cha tôi sống theo nguyên tắc; hàng ngày ông ấy thức giấc lúc 6 giờ và đi ngủ lúc 10 giờ.
	My father; he wakes up at 6 o'clock and goes to bed at 10 o'clock every day.
9	Hầu hết mọi người đều dành dụm tiền cho lúc khó khăn.
	Most people .
10	Đôi khi người ta coi thường người khác.
	People sometimes others.
11	Khi bạn học, một cách tốt để làm sáng khoái đầu óc là thường xuyên nghi ngơi.
	When you study, a good way to refresh your mind is to regularly.
12	Tôi tin tưởng bạn tôi vì cậu ấy luôn luôn đứng về phía tôi.
	I trust my friend because he always

Tra	nslate the following into English by putting the given words and phrases in the right order.
1	Theo quan điểm của tôi, bản chất con người thi tốt, nhưng đôi khi người ta phạm sai lầm. (human nature is good / make mistakes / in my view / but people sometimes)
2	Một người đúng giờ tạo được ấn tượng tốt đổi với người khác. (makes / on others / a good impression / a punctual person)
3	Tập thể dục thường xuyên thì có ích cho sức khỏe thể chất của bạn. (is helpful to / your physical health / getting a regular workout)
4	Đôi khi kiếm được công việc mới là đến được bước ngoặt quyết định trong cuộc sống. (in life / sometimes / is reaching / a turning point / getting a new job)
5	Tôi có lòng tin vào gia đình tôi, vì vậy tôi chia sẻ những bí mật của tôi với họ. (with them / my family / my secrets / I have trust in / so I share)
6	Tôi cố gắng chịu đựng sai lầm của người khác bởi vì tôi có thể mắc các sai lầm giống vậy. (the same ones / others' mistakes / because I may make / I try tó put up with)
7	Để duy trì mối quan hệ tốt với người khác, bạn nên có kỹ năng giao tế tốt. (you should / in order to / maintain good relationships / have good interpersonal skills / with others)
8	Để khỏe mạnh, điều quan trọng là phải cung cấp chất dinh dưỡng cho bản thân. (to provide good nutrition / it is important / for yourself / in order to be healthy)
9	Có sự xét đoán tốt hầu như không có gì liên quan đến thông minh cả. (having common sense / being intelligent / has little to do with)
10	Nếu bạn muốn hạnh phúc, điều quan trọng là phải có thái độ lạc quan đối với cuộc sống.

B

Writing Challenge

Translate the following into English. Nếu ban có nhiều việc phải làm, ban nên sắp xếp những việc ưu tiên trước khi hành động. Một số người sơ phát biểu trước công chúng bởi vì ho không tự tin. Nếu ban có thể liều làm lai từ đầu, ban sẽ không sơ thất bai. Vì áp lực của ban bè đồng trang lựa, một số học sinh không thể tránh khỏi rắc rối. 5 Quan hệ tốt với người khác nâng cao chất lương cuộc sống của mình. Một số người không thể từ bỏ thói quen xấu bởi vì họ nghiên những thói quen đó. Thật không khôn ngoạn khi xét đoán người khác qua vẻ bên ngoài của ho. Đôi khi, làm châm lai là cách nhanh nhất. Giữ bí mật không phải lúc nào cũng biến bạn trở thành một người tốt.

10 Người nhập cư gặp nhiều lúc khó khăn vì họ phải thích nghi với một hoàn cảnh mới.

11	Một số người chỉ trích người khác gay gắt nhưng rất hào phóng khi đánh giá bản thân.
12	Thiếu sự trao đổi thông tin với gia đình sẽ không có lợi cho sức khỏe tinh thần của bạn.
13	Tôi có tính cách chan hòa, vì vậy tôi không thể chịu đựng nổi khi phải ở nhà một mình.
14	Tốt hơn hết là nên hỏi ý kiến bác sĩ trước khi uống thuốc nếu bạn lo âu về bất cứ phản ứng phụ nào.
15	Trung thực với bản thân có nghĩa là nói thật với bản thân.
16	Sự thất vọng chỉ là chuyện nhất thời đối với thanh thiếu niên nếu họ được trang bị/có lòng can đẩm.
17	Những người không thành công có khuynh hướng có thái độ bi quan trong khi đó những người thành công là những người lạc quan.
18	Bạn nên quyết định cẩn thận khi bạn chọn môn chuyên ngành ở đại học.
19	Thế giới sẽ nhàm chán nếu mọi người đều có cùng thị hiếu về mọi thứ.
20	Những người lạc quan cố gắng không hối tiếc về những gì họ không thể thay đổi được.

Culture & Leisure

a copycat crime một vụ phạm tội do bắt chước một cách mù quáng

a couch potato một người nghiện tivi

a cultural legacy một di sản văn hóa

a guided tour một chuyến du lịch có hướng dẫn viên

adopt a custom from another country chấp nhận một truyền thống từ một đất nước khác

affect one's behavior anh hưởng đến cách cư xử của mình

appreciate art biết thưởng thức nghệ thuật

8 attend a live performance dự một buổi trình diễn trực tiếp

be attracted to bị cuốn hút vào
be in vogue đang thình hành

be on exhibit dang được trưng bày

be one's opponent in

celebrate a festival

12

15

20

27

become an idol to teenagers trở thành thần tương của thanh thiếu niên

là đối thủ của mình ở

tổ chức một lễ hội

14 carry on an activity tiếp tục một hoạt động

celebrate a national holiday tổ chức lễ mừng ngày quốc khánh

7 develop a culture phát triển một nền văn hóa

18 **develop a research center** phát triển một trung tâm nghiên cứu

19 dress in a traditional costume mặc trang phục truyền thống

dress in the costume of mặc trang phục của

21 **during recess** trong giờ nghỉ/giờ giải lao

engage in a cultural activity tham gia vào một hoạt động văn hóa

enjoy outdoor activities vui thú với các hoạt động ngoài trời
exercise one's imaginative power rèn luyện trí tưởng tượng của mình

25 **experience jet lag** bi chứng mệt mỗi và mất phương hướng sau thuyến bay dài

26 **follow a local custom** theo một tập quán địa phương

follow a rule tuân theo một quy định

get motion sickness bị say xe

29	give a ride to someone	cho (ai) đi nhờ xe
	give/express an opinion	đưa ra/bày tỏ ý kiến
30	give/express an opinion	dua ra bay to y kien
31	hand down a tradition	truyền lại một truyền thống
32	have a knack for	có tài/sở trường về
33	have an effect on	có ảnh hưởng đối với
34	have leisure	có thời gian rãnh
35	have one's spare time	có thời gian rảnh
36	have the opportunity to-V	có cơ hội làm gì
37	hold/throw a party	tổ chức một bữa tiệc
38	keep a first-aid kit	giữ một hộp sơ cứu
39	lead public opinion	dẫn đường cho dư luận công chúng
40	make a bonfire	đốt một đống lửa
41	make/shoot a film about	quay một cuốn phim về
42	make a reservation	đặt vé/chỗ/phòng
43	make history	tạo ra lịch sử, đi vào lịch sử
44	model oneself on someone	theo gương (ai), bắt chước (ai)
45	play a musical instrument	chơi một nhạc cụ
46	recharge one's batteries	nạp lại năng lượng, nghỉ ngơi và thư giãn
		để khôi phục lại sức khỏe của mình
47	recommend someone to-V	khuyên (ai) làm gì
48	replace something with something	thay (cái gì) bằng (cái gì)
49	respect cultural differences	tôn trọng sự khác biệt văn hóa
50	save face	giữ thể diện
51	show creativity	cho thấy tính sáng tạo
52	speak a different language from	nói một ngôn ngữ khác với
53	subscribe to a newspaper/magazine	đặng ký/đặt mua báo/tạp chí dài hạn
54	take a break from one's routine	thoát khỏi cuộc sống hàng ngày của mình
55	travel abroad	du lịch nước ngoài

Check-Up

Match the words or phrases on the left with the best collocates on the right.

Basic Drill A dress in face keep abroad during a first-aid kit experience cultural differences save motion sickness a traditional costume respect travel • recess make creativity get jet lag show a reservation engage in a cultural activity a cultural legacy

1	du lịch nước ngoài	travel abroad
2	bị say xe	
3	mặc trang phục truyền thống	
4	trong giờ nghỉ/giờ giải lao	
5	giữ thể diện	
6	tôn trọng sự khác biệt văn hóa	
7	giữ một hộp sơ cứu	

một di sản văn hóacho thấy tính sáng tao

sau chuyển bay dài

đặt vé/chỗ/phòng

bị chứng mệt mỏi và mất phương hướng

tham gia vào một hoạt động văn hóa

9

Match the words or phrases on the left with the best collocates on the right.

Basic Drill B carry on a party a research center develop public opinion a copycat ... oneself on someone lead one's batteries recharge model an activity hold crime hand down a break from one's routine a tradition play one's imaginative power exercise a musical instrument take celebrate a festival

một vụ phạm tội do bắt chước một cách mù quáng a copycat crime 1 phát triển một trung tâm nghiên cứu 2 3 nap lại năng lượng, nghỉ ngơi và thư giãn để khôi phục lại sức khỏe của mình tiếp tục một hoạt động 4 tổ chức một bữa tiệc 5 theo gương (ai), bắt chước (ai) 6 7 dẫn đường cho dư luân công chúng chơi một nhạc cu 8 9 thoát khổi cuộc sống hàng ngày của mình rèn luyên trí tưởng tương của mình 10

tổ chức một lễ hội

truyền lại một truyền thống

11

Writing Practice

Complete the following by filling in the blanks with the appropriate collocations.

1	Người ta nên tôn trọng sự khác biệt văn hóa khi họ	đi du lịch đến các đất nước khác.			
	People should whe	en they travel to other countries.			
_	THE REAL PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF TH				
2	. 01. / 0 1				
	I like to of other co	untries.			
3	Nếu ban dư đinh đi một tua du lịch có hướng dẫn vị	ên vào mùa hè, ban nên bắt đầu dành dum tiến bây giờ đi.			
	If you plan to take	in the summer, you should start saving money now.			
4	Nếu tôi có cơ hội, tôi muốn quay một cuốn phim về	nông đồng giảo chúng tôi			
4					
	If I have the chance, I want to	our community.			
5	Một số người mua những thứ mà họ không có đủ tiề	n mua để giữ thể diện.			
	Some people buy things that they cannot aff	ord in order to			
6	Ngày nay, người có thể dẫn đường cho dư luận công	chúng thì có quyển lực.			
	Nowadays, a person who can	has power.			
7	Không phải tất cả những người tạo ra lịch sử đều tổ	t cå.			
	Not all the people who	are good.			
8	Đôi khi người ta cần phải đi nghỉ vì họ muốn thoát	Đôi khi người ta cần phải đi nghỉ vì họ muốn thoát khỏi cuộc sống hàng ngày của mình.			
	People sometimes need a vacation because	they want to			
9	Trước khi đưa ra ý kiến, ban phải lắng nghe người	chán trướn đã			
9		o listen to others first.			
	, you have t	o listen to others first.			
10	Thanh thiếu niên thường có khuynh hướng bị cuốn l	nút vào truyện phiêu lưu.			
	Adolescents tend to	adventure stories.			
11	1 Bạn không cần phải biết lịch sử nghệ thuật để biết	thưởng thức nghệ thuật.			
	You do not have to know art history in order	to			
12	2 Ban nhạc rọck đó đã trở thành thần tương của than	h thiếu niên kể từ lần trình diễn đầu tiên của họ			
12	2 Ban nhạc rock đó đã trở thành thần tượng của than The rock band has	h thiếu niên kể từ lần trình diễn đầu tiên của họ. since its first performance.			

B	Translate the following into English by putting the given words and phrases in the right order.				
	1	Tôi tham gia vào các hoạt động vân hóa khác nhau trong thời gian rằnh rỗi. (various cultural activities / during my free time / I engage in)			
	2	Mùa hè là mùa tuyệt với để vui thú với các hoạt động ngoài trời. (a great season / outdoor activities / to enjoy / summer is)			
	3	Khi bạn chơi một môn thể thao, bạn phải tuân theo một số quy định. (a sport / you should follow / when you play / certain rules)			
	4	Tôi không thể nạp lại năng lượng khi tôi trải qua thời gian rảnh rỗi (vui chơi) với người khác. (my batteries / when I spend / I cannot recharge / with others / my free time)			
	5	Khi bạn đi du lịch ra nước ngoài, điều quan trọng là phải theo các tập quán địa phương. (the local customs / it is important / when you travel to / to follow / a foreign country)			
	6	Chúng ta có thể hiểu thêm về tổ tiên của chúng ta bằng cách đi xem những gì đang được trưng bày ở các viện bảo tàng. (by going to see / about our ancestors / in museums / we can learn / what is on exhibit)			
	7	Chúng ta phải truyền lại truyền thống của chúng ta cho con cháu của mình. (to our descendants / our traditions / hand down / we are obliged to)			
	8	Chấp nhận một truyền thống từ một đất nước khác là một cách để phát triển văn hóa của chính chúng ta. (our own culture / from another country / to develop / is one way / adopting a custom)			
	9	Nếu chúng ta có đủ ngân sách, chúng ta có thể tổ chức lễ hội với nhiều người hơn. (enough of a budget / the festival / we could celebrate / with more people / if we had)			
	10	Dù bạn có nhận biết hay không, tívi cũng có thể ảnh hưởng đến cách cư xử của bạn.			

Writing Challenge

Translate the following into English.

1	Khi đi du lịch nước ngoài, bạn có thể bị chứng mệt mỗi và mất phương hướng sau chuyến bay dài.
2	Một số người không muốn đi du lịch bởi vì họ bị say xe nghiêm trọng.
3	Đi cấm trại thì tốt hơn là ở lại khách sạn bởi vì tôi thích đốt một đống lửa.
4	Bạn nên đặt vé trước để xem một buổi trình diễn trực tiếp.
5	Ngày nay, tivi quyết định cái gì sẽ thịnh hành vào ngày mai.
6	Để có nhiều bạn bè, bạn nên tiếp tục các hoạt động khác nhau.
7	Đặt mua báo dài hạn thì rẻ hơn là mua báo ở các quẩy báo.
8	Cho dù tôi mặc trang phục của nữ hoàng, nó cũng không làm cho tôi trở thành nữ hoàng.
9	Mỗi người đều có sở trường về việc gì đó.
10	Nếu bạn rèn luyện trí tưởng tượng của mình, bạn có thể giao tiếp với trẻ em tốt hơn.

11	Một người nghiện tivi sẽ không hiểu được về đẹp của thiên nhiên.
12	Bố mẹ nên khuyên con cái đặt ra những quy định của chính mình.
13	Sinh viên không được phép sử dụng điện thoại di động trong giờ giải lao.
14	Nếu bạn sống ở một khu vực nông thôn thì thật khó để dự một buổi trình diễn trực tiếp.
15	Cho người lạ đi nhờ xe trên đường phố có thể là việc nguy hiểm.
16	Bạn có thể không biết tại sao bạn phải tổ chức lễ mừng ngày quốc khánh nếu bạn không học lịch sử.
17	Khi ai đó nói một ngôn ngữ khác với bạn, bạn phải chú ý nhiều hơn.
18	Tôi cho rằng học sinh có thể cho thấy tính sáng tạo ở các lớp nghệ thuật hoặc âm nhạc.
19	Theo ý kiến của tôi, phim bạo lực có ảnh hưởng ít hơn đối với dạng tội phạm do bắt chước một cách mù quáng so với tin tức trên tivi.
20	Nếu tòi có cơ hội đi nước ngoài, tôi muốn đi đến châu Âu.

11

Health & Environment

1	a dense population	một dân số đông đúc
2	adapt to the environment	thích nghi với môi trường
3	an endangered animal	một loài động vật đang gặp nguy hiểm
4	be allergic to	bị dị ứng với
5	be good for mental health	tốt cho sức khỏe tinh thần
6	be in good health	có sức khỏe tốt
7	be infected with a virus	bị nhiễm vi rút
8	be short of	thiếu
9	car exhaust	khí thải của xe hơi
10	care for the handicapped	chăm sóc người tàn tật
11	cause an abnormal climate	gây ra một khí hậu bất thường
12	cause damage to the environment	gây tổn hại đến môi trường
13	come down with	suy sụp vì
14	conduct medical research	tiến hành nghiên cứu y học
15	consume energy	tiêu thụ năng lượng
16	consume natural resources	tiêu thụ tài nguyên thiên nhiên
17	conserve the environment	bảo tồn/giữ gìn môi trường
18	cure someone of a disease	chữa khỏi bệnh cho ai
19	a desperate food shortage	thiếu hụt lương thực trầm trọng
20	develop medical technology	phát triển công nghệ y học
21	do daily exercise	tập thể dục hàng ngày
22	dump factory waste	đổ rác của nhà máy
23	educate the public	giáo dục công chúng
24	environmental pollution	ô nhiễm môi trường
25	get a physical check-up	được kiểm tra sức khỏe
26	get over an illness	khởi bệnh
27	healthy eating habits	thối quen ăn uống lành mạnh

có hàm lượng calo cao

high in calories

29	in critical condition	trong tinh trang nguv kich				
30	in one's natural state	trong tình trạng tự nhiên của mình				
31	keep a well-balanced diet	theo một chế độ ăn cản đối chất dinh dưỡng				
32	life expectancy	tuổi thọ				
33	lower one's blood pressure	hạ huyết áp của mình xuống				
34	lower one's stress level	giảm mức độ căng thẳng của mình xuống				
35	manage medical facilities	quan lý các cơ sở y tế				
36	non-renewable resources những nguồn tài nguyên không tái tạo được					
37	on prescription	theo đơn thuốc				
38	preserve the environment	bảo tồn/giữ gìn môi trường				
39	prevent a disease	ngăn ngừa bệnh				
40	prohibit smoking	cấm hút thuốc				
41	purify polluted air	làm tinh khiết không khí bị ô nhiễm				
42	receive sufficient nutrition	nhận đẩy đủ chất dinh dưỡng				
43	recover from an illness	bình phục sau một căn bệnh				
44	relieve overpopulation	giảm nạn nhân mãn, giảm bớt sự đông dân quá mức				
45	run out of resources	cạn kiệt/hết các tài nguyên				
46	save tropical rainforests	cứu các rừng mưa nhiệt đới				
47	stay in shape	giữ được vóc dáng				
47 48	stay in shape sustainable energy resources	giữ được vóc dáng các nguồn năng lượng duy trì sự cân bằng sinh thái				
	AND SPECIAL POPULATION					
48	sustainable energy resources	các nguồn năng lượng duy trì sự cân bằng sinh thái				

O Check-Up

Match the words or phrases on the left with the best collocates on the right.

Basic Drill A

prohibit
get over
stay
life ---healthy
an endangered
urban
lower
receive
care for
in critical
educate

animal
an illness
smoking
in shape
expectancy
eating habits
condition
one's blood pressure
the handicapped
sufficient nutrition
the public
sprawl

tuổi tho giữ được vóc dáng 2 thói quen ăn uống lành mạnh 3 cấm hút thuốc 5 khỏi bệnh 6 một loài động vật đang gặp nguy hiểm 7 hạ huyết áp của mình xuống 8 trong tình trang nguy kich 9 nhận đẩy đủ chất dinh dưỡng

giáo dục công chúng

sự đô thị hóa ở ven thành phố chăm sóc người tàn tật

life expectancy						

10

11

Match the words or phrases on the left with the best collocates on the right.

Basic Drill B daily exercise high cause damage food shortage a desperate in calories non-renewable tropical rainforests consume natural resources to the environment save do polluted air • resources purify a well-balanced diet keep population a dense conduct energy resources sustainable medical research

1	những nguồn tài nguyên không tái tạo được	non-renewable resources
2	tập thể dục hàng ngày	
3	có hàm lượng calo cao	
4	gây tổn hại đến môi trường	
5	cứu các rừng mưa nhiệt đới	
6	thiếu hụt lương thực trầm trọng	
7	tiêu thụ tài nguyên thiên nhiên	
8	một dân số đông đúc	
9	làm tinh khiết không khí bị ô nhiễm	
10	tiến hành nghiên cứu y học	
11	các nguồn năng lượng duy trì sự cân bằng sinh thái	
12	theo một chế độ ăn cân đối chất dinh dưỡng	

Writing Practice

Co	Complete the following by filling in the blanks with the appropriate collocations.		
1	Tôi không ăn bơ đậu phộng vì tôi bị dị ứng với đậu phộng.		
	I don't eat peanut butter because I peanuts.		
2	Chúng ta có thể bị thiếu hụt lương thực trầm trọng nếu chúng ta tiếp tục phụ thuộc thực phẩm vào các quốc gia khác. We may suffer from if we keep depending on other countries for food.		
3	Ngay cả một bác sĩ nổi tiếng cũng không thể chữa khỏi bệnh cho bệnh nhân nếu bệnh nhân đó không muốn bình phụ		
	Even a noted doctor cannot if the patient does not want to get well.		
4	Điều quan trọng là bệnh nhân phải nhận đẩy đủ chất dinh dưỡng sau khi trải qua phẫu thuật.		
	It is important for a patient to after undergoing surgery.		
5	Việc giáo dục công chúng là bước đẩu tiên để ngăn ngừa những căn bệnh lây lan.		
	is the first step in preventing contagious diseases.		
6	Nếu bạn bị suy sụp sức khỏe, bạn sẽ biết thích nghi với môi trường thì khó khản như thế nào.		
	If you become physically challenged, you will know how hard it is to		
7	Nếu chúng ta đã quan tâm đến việc giữ gìn môi trường, bây giờ chúng ta sẽ không bị hiệu ứng nhà kính.		
	If we had been concerned about, we would not have the greenhouse effect now.		
8	Tôi nghĩ rằng nhiên liệu hóa thạch gây tổn hại đến môi trường hơn bất cứ thứ gì khác.		
	I think that fossil fuels more than anything else.		
9	Nếu mọi người được kiểm tra sức khỏe mỗi năm một lần, tổng tử suất sẽ giảm xuống.		
	If everyone once a year, the overall death rate will decrease.		
10	Việc phát quang do sự đô thị hóa ở ven thành phố đã trở thành vấn để nghiêm trọng ở đất nước này.		
	Deforestation due to has become a serious problem in this country.		
11	Chúng ta sẽ thiếu nước uống trong tương lai gần nếu chúng ta không dừng việc gây ô nhiễm các con sông.		
	We will drinking water in the near future if we don't stop polluting rivers.		
12	Nhiều quốc gia đang chuyển sự chú ý sang các nguồn năng lượng duy trì sự cản bằng sinh thái như là nàng lượng mặt trời, nước và năng lượng gió.		
	Many countries are turning their attention to such as solar energy, water, and wind power.		

Tra	anslate the following into English by putting the given words and phrases in the right order
1	Thức ân trong các nhâ hàng thức ân nhanh có hàm lượng calo cao. (are hìgh / foods / in calories / in fast-food restaurants)
2	Nếu bạn cổ gắng tập thể dục hàng ngày và giữ được vớc dáng, bạn sẽ có một cuộc sống khỏe mạnh hơn. (and to stay in shape / a healthier life / exercise every day / you will have / if you try to)
3	Một số bác sĩ dành cuộc đời mình không phải để điều trị cho bệnh nhân mà để tiến hành nghiên cứu y học. (spend their lives / not treating patients / but conducting / some doctors / medical research)
4	Nghi ngơi sau khi làm việc là một cách tốt để giảm mức độ căng thắng của bạn xuống. (to lower / after work / is a good way / your stress level / taking a rest)
5	Một số người tin rằng họ có thể khỏi bệnh chi bằng điều trị y tế. (get over / only with medical treatment / some people / an illness / they can / believe that)
6	Chú tôi chọn trở thành người ăn chay để hạ huyết áp của mình xuống. (become a vegetarian / to lower / my uncle / his blood pressure / chose to)
7	Nếu không cứu các rừng mưa nhiệt đới thì sẽ không thể chặn lại sự ấm lên toàn cầu. (the tropical rainforests / to stop / it is impossible / global warming / without saving)
8	Theo một chế độ ăn cân đối chất dinh dưỡng thì quan trọng đối với sức khỏe của bạn như tập thể dục đều đặn vậy (is as important / keeping a well-balanced diet / to your health / as exercising regularly)
9	Để ngân chận sự ô nhiễm nước, chính phủ nghiêm cấm các công ty không được đổ rác của nhà máy xuống sông. (into rivers / water pollution / the government / in order to prevent / from dumping factory waste / companies strictly forbids)

10 Thuốc giam đầu chỉ được bản theo đơn thuốc để ngắn người ta khối lạm dụng chúng.

(only by prescription / from overusing them / painkillers should / to prevent people / be available)

Writing Challenge

Translate the following into English.

1	Chúng ta nên cấm hút thuốc ở nơi công cộng để bảo vệ những người không hút thuốc.
2	Giáo dục vệ sinh rất quan trọng để bảo vệ mọi người khỏi bị nhiễm bệnh.
3	Tài nguyên thiên nhiên như than đá hay đầu mỏ là những nguồn tài nguyên không tái tạo được.
4	Thối quen ăn uống lành mạnh có thể giảm những nguy cơ mắc bệnh liên quan đến tim mạch.
5	Sử dụng ít nước hơn và mang theo tách của mình giúp giữ gìn môi trường.
6	Ẩn ít hơn và tập thể dục hàng ngày là những cách ăn kiêng tốt nhất.
7	Trong khi làm ô nhiễm không khí thì dễ, việc làm tinh khiết không khí bị ô nhiễm thì rất khó.
8	Đi ngủ khi bạn đang bị căng thẳng không phải lúc nào cũng tốt cho sức khỏe tinh thần của bạn.
9	Dân số đồng đức đã gây ra sự gia tầng nhiệt độ nghiệm trọng trong thành phố của chúng ta.
10	$M_{0}{\rm i}$ sinh vật sống đều tiêu thụ năng lượng, nhưng con người tiêu thụ nhiều năng lượng nhất.

11	Ngừa bệnh thi quan trọng hơn chữa bệnh.
12	Thế hệ tiếp theo sẽ không thể tiêu thụ nhiều tài nguyên thiên như chúng ta.
13	Học sinh nên học ở trưởng cách chúng ta có thể chăm sốc người tàn tật.
14	Mặc dù tuổi thọ đã tăng trong nhiều năm qua, nhiều người vẫn chết trẻ.
15	Chính phủ của chúng ta đang quản lý các cơ sở y tế rất tốt để cạnh tranh với các cơ sở y tế tư nhân.
16	Do khai thác bừa bãi, rừng nhiệt đới của sông Amazon hiện đang trong tình trạng nguy kịch.
17	Người lạc quan hiếm khi suy sụp vì bệnh tật.
18	Những người àn thức ăn có hàm lượng calo cao phải thường xuyên tập thể dục.
19	Nếu chúng ta có thể giảm nạn nhân mãn của thành phố chúng ta, các vấn để giao thông cũng sẽ được giải quyết.
20	Người dân sống ở các khu vực đô thị tiếp xúc với khí thái xe hơi nhiều hơn người dân sống ở các khu vực nông thôn.

Science & Technology

1	advance medical science	thúc đẩy khoa học y học
2	advances in technology	những tiến bộ trong công nghệ
3	attach a file to an email	đính kèm một tệp tin vào một thư điện tử
4	be the key to	là điều then chốt đối với, là giải pháp cho
5	be under the gravity of	dưới sức hút của
6	cannot do without	không thể không cần đến, không thể nhịn được,
		không thể sống nếu thiếu
7	check one's email	kiểm tra thư điện tử của mình
8	computer illiterate	mù vi tính
9	conduct research on	tiến hành nghiên cứu về
10	create a new trend	tạo ra một trào lưu mới
11	create an online community	tạo ra một cộng đồng trên mạng
12	cut off spam	xóa thư rác
13	cutting-edge technology	công nghệ tiến bộ nhất
14	develop a nuclear weapon	phát triển một vũ khí hạt nhân
15	develop computer technology	phát triển công nghệ vi tính
16	do something by hand	làm (gì đó) bằng tay
17	download software from	tải phần mềm từ
18	electronic appliances	các thiết bị điện tử
19	enhance the quality of life	nâng cao chất lượng cuộc sống
20	explore outer space	thám hiểm vũ trụ
21	expose someone to something	đặt (ai) vào (cái gì)
22	facilitate communication	làm cho việc giao tiếp được dễ dàng
23	gain access to information	được tiếp cận với thông tin
24	handle something improperly	xử lý sai (điều gì)
25	search for information	tim kiểm thông tin
26	interact with	tương tác với
27	program a computer	lập trình cho một máy vi tính
28	keep in step with globalization	tiếp nhận việc toàn cấu hóa

29	keep in touch with	giữ liên lạc với
30	key something into a computer	gồ (điều gì) vào máy vì tính
31	launch a space mission	khởi đầu một sử mệnh không gian
32	connect to the Internet	kết nối với mạng Internet
33	make a difference	tạo ra một sự khác biệt
34	make a long-distance call	gọi một cuộc điện thoại đường dài
35	make a significant breakthrough	thực hiện một bước đột phá ý nghĩa
36	make an adjustment	thực hiện việc điều chỉnh
37	make an in-depth analysis of	thực hiện một phân tích sâu rộng về
88	make an online purchase	mua một món hàng trên mạng
9	make progress	tiến bộ
10	make wireless communications	thực hiện những giao tiếp vô tuyến
1	peer-to-peer sharing	việc chia sẻ tài nguyên trên mạng Internet
2	process information with a computer	xử lý thông tin bằng máy vi tính
3	provide someone with something	cung cấp cho (ai) (cái gì)
4	reach a remote place	đến được một nơi xa xôi
15	send a space probe to	phái một tàu thăm dò không gian đến
16	shorten the distance	rút ngắn khoảng cách
7	shut down a computer	tắt máy vi tính
8	sign up for a website	đăng ký một trang web
9	space exploration	thám hiểm không gian
0	stay up to date with technology	luôn cập nhật công nghệ
1	surf the Internet	lướt mạng Internet
2	take the first step in	đặt bước chân đầu tiên vào
3	a technological development	một phát triển công nghệ
4	transfer a file	chuyển đến một tệp tin
5	turn on/off the TV	bật mở/tắt tivi

Check-Up

Match the words or phrases on the left with the best collocates on the right.

Basic Drill A do something an adjustment create medical science interact ... a new trend advance with a technological development make by hand attach a file a file shorten into a computer transfer for information develop computer technology search the distance key something to an email

1	tương tác với	interact with
2	tạo ra một trào lưu mới	
3	thực hiện việc điều chỉnh	
4	làm (gì đó) bằng tay	
5	một phát triển công nghệ	
6	thúc đẩy khoa học y học	
7	chuyển đến một tệp tin	
8	đính kèm một tệp tin vào một thư điện tử	
9	gỗ (điểu gì) vào máy vi tính	
10	tìm kiếm thông tin	
11	rút ngắn khoảng cách	
12	phát triển công nghệ vi tính	

Match the words or phrases on the left with the best collocates on the right.

Basic Drill B spam cut off improperly space . sharing explore make outer space exploration handle something progress peer-to-peer research on stay a remote place develop up to date with technology be under send a nuclear weapon a space probe to reach conduct the gravity of

space exploration thám hiểm không gian 1 việc chia sẻ tài nguyên trên mạng Internet 2 3 xóa thư rác tiến bô 5 xử lý sai (điều gì) phái một tàu thăm dò không gian đến 6 7 đến được một nơi xa xôi 8 thám hiểm vũ tru dưới sức hút của 9

luôn cập nhật công nghệ

tiến hành nghiên cứu về

phát triển một vũ khí hat nhân

11

12

Writing Practice

A	Со	mplete the following by filling in the blanks with the appropriate collocations.
	1	Thám hiểm vũ trụ là một trong những công việc có ý nghĩa của NASA. is one of NASA's significant jobs.
	2	Ngày nay, nhiều người tạo ra các cộng đồng trên mạng để kết bạn. Nowadays, a number of people to make friends.
	3	Một số người không nhận thức được rằng tải phần mềm từ các trang web bất hợp pháp là điều bất hợp pháp. Some people don't realize that it is illegal to illegal websites.
	4	Trước khi tắt máy vi tính, bạn nên chắc rằng không có dữ liệu nào chưa được lưu lại. Before, you should make sure that there is no data unsaved.
	5	Bạn không cẩn phải trả thêm tiền để gọi một cuộc điện thoại đường dài nếu bạn sử dụng dịch vụ điện thoại Internet. You do not need to pay extra money to if you use an Internet phone service.
	6	Các nhà nghiên cứu đã tiến bộ trong hiểu biết khoa học cơ bản của họ về bệnh ung thư. Researchers have in their basic scientific understanding of cancer.
	7	Quốc gia đó có nguyên vật liệu thô, công nghệ và tiển vốn để phát triển vũ khí hạt nhân. The country has the raw materials, technology, and capital to
	8	Một số trang web trên Internet đặt trẻ em vào nguy cơ phạm pháp ở lứa tuổi vị thành niên. Some Internet websites the risk of juvenile delinquency.
	9	Các nhà khoa học đang trong quá trình thực hiện một phân tích sâu rộng về khí hậu của sao Hỏa. Scientists are in the process of the climate of Mars.
	10	Ở một số quốc gia, việc chia sẻ tài nguyên trên mạng Internet không phải là việc bất hợp pháp. In some countries, is not illegal.
	11	Nghiên cứu vũ trụ cho chúng ta một cơ hội hiểu thêm về hành tinh của chúng ta. Outer space studies to learn more about our planet.
	12	Một số trẻ em xem tivi nhiều đến nỗi bố mẹ phải sử dụng vũ lực để buộc chúng tắt tivi. Some children watch television so much that their parents have to use physical force to make them

В	Tra	anslate the following into English by putting the given words and phrases in the right order.
	1	Ngày nay, các nhà cung cấp dịch vụ thư điện tử đang cố gắng phát triển những cách xóa thư rắc hiệu quả. (develop efficient ways / email service providers / to cut off spam / these days / are trying to)
	2	Tôi cho rằng việc sử dụng mạng Internet không làm cho việc giao tiếp được dễ dàng mà còn cắn trở nó. (the use of the Internet / but impedes it / I believe / does not facilitate communication)
	3	Nếu bạn biết cách kết nổi với mạng Internet thì học cách khám phá nó là điều để dàng. (if you know / how to explore it / it is easy / how to connect / to learn / to the Internet)
	4	Nếu một người lạ chuyển đến một tệp tin, bạn không nên mở nó vì có thể nó chứa vi rút máy vi tính. (transfers a file / as it may / you should not open it / if a stranger / contain computer viruses)
	5	Có nhiều điều quan trọng phải làm trên trái đất hơn là phái một tàu thăm dò không gian đến những hành tinh khác. (to other planets / to do on the Earth / there are more important things / than to send a space probe)
	6	Vấn để giao thông gần các trung tâm mua sắm đã giảm vì nhiều người mua hàng trên mạng. (near shopping centers / as many people / have reduced / make online purchases / traffic problems)
r	7	Vài thập niên trước đây, chuyện thám hiểm không gian chỉ tồn tại trong các tiểu thuyết khoa học giả tưởng. (space exploration / a few decades ago / in science-fiction novels / existed only)
	8	Xử lý thông tin bằng máy vi tính thì dễ dàng và chính xác hơn dùng bộ não của bạn nhiều. (with a computer / it is much easier / to process information / and more accurate / than to use your brain)
	9	Tôi nghi ngờ không biết có tiến bộ nào kể từ khi loài người khởi đầu một sử mệnh không gian. (there has been / a space mission / since humankind launched / I doubt / any progress)

10 Nhờ mạng Internet, việc tim kiếm thông tin đã trở nên để dàng hơn trước đây. (thanks to / has become easier / information / than before / searching for / the Internet)

Writing Challenge

Translate the following into English.

1	Mục đích của thám hiểm không gian là tìm những hành tinh khác mà con người có thể điều khiến.
2	Trước khi đăng ký một trang web, bạn nên đọc kỹ các điều khoản dành cho thành viên.
3	Nhiều người có thể giữ liên lạc với bạn cũ qua mạng Internet.
4	Những tiến bộ căn bản về công nghệ được xem là một nguyên nhân của những vấn để môi trường gắn đây.
5	Chính phủ sẽ tạo điều kiện cho người tàn tật được tiếp cận với thông tin.
6	Điều cần thiết đối với chúng ta là phải thay đổi nguồn năng lượng của các thiết bị điện tử để bảo vệ môi trường.
7	Một số người không biết cách lập trình cho một máy vi tính mặc dù họ sử dụng nó hàng ngày.
8	Thật khó để luôn cập nhật công nghệ vì nó tiến bộ quá nhanh.
9	Công nghệ di truyền học đã tạo ra sự khác biệt to lớn trong nhiều khía cạnh của cuộc sống chúng ta.
10	Chúng ta có thể làm được nhiều việc với điện thoại di động của chúng ta hơn là việc thực hiện những giao ${\rm d} \hat{\rm e} \rho$ vô tu

11	Người ta đã sử dụng mạng Internet để lấy thông tin và giao tiếp với người khác.
12	Không có sự trợ giúp của công nghệ tiến bộ nhất, người xưa vẫn xây dựng được Vạn lý trường thành và Kim tự tháp.
13	Đọc nhiều sách hơn và xem tivi ít hơn là điều then chốt đối với tư duy sâu sắc.
14	Công nghệ hiện đại tiến bộ đến nỗi chúng ta không thể thực hiện một bước đột phá ý nghĩa nào nữa.
15	Công nghệ vi tính có thể đạt đến tình trạng hiện tại vì người ta không ngừng thực hiện việc điều chỉnh.
16	Chính phủ của chúng ta nên giải thích tại sao chúng ta cần phải tiến hành nghiên cứu về vũ trụ.
17	Do những hậu quả tiêu cực của toàn cầu hóa, một số quốc gia không muốn tiếp nhận việc toàn cầu hóa.
18	Những người không có kiến thức cơ bản về máy vi tính được gọi là mù vi tính.
19	Chính phủ đã chi rất nhiều tiền để thúc đẩy khoa học y học.
20	Vì điện thoại di động bây giờ là một phần không thể thiếu của cuộc sống hiện đại, nhiều người nghĩ họ không thể sống nếu thiếu điện thoại di động của họ.

Essential Patterns & Expressions

English has a vast number of fixed patterns and expressions used in writing as well as in speaking. When native speakers talk or write, these patterns and expressions act like single units and allow them to save time and effort. Likewise, it will help increase your writing fluency to have these ready-made patterns and expressions presented in this part in your language repertoire:

- Unit 13 Agree / Disagree I
 Agreement & Disagreement, Assertion, and Summarization
- Unit 14 Agree / Disagree II
 Agreement & Disagreement, Cause & Effect, Exemplification, and Citation
- Unit 15 Preference I
 Preference, Comparison, and Concession
- Unit 16 Preference II

 Preference, Assumption, and Elaboration

Agree / Disagree I

Agreement & Disagreement

1 I agree with ~ / that S+V ~ Tôi đồng ý với ~ / rằng ~ I agree with the idea that movies and television can negatively influence our behavior.
Tôi đồng ý với ý kiến cho rằng phim ảnh và tivi có thể ảnh hưởng tiêu cực đối với cách cư xử của chúng ta.

I agree that people should not judge others by their looks.

Tôi đồng ý rằng người ta không nên đánh giá người khác qua vẻ bể ngoài.

2 I disagree with ~ / that S+V ~ Tôi không đồng ý với ~ / rằng ~ I disagree with the idea that success always comes from taking risks.
Tôi không đồng ý với ý kiến cho rằng thành công luôn luôn xuất phát từ việc làm liễu.

I disagree that children should be allowed to watch TV without their parents' permission. Tôi không đồng ý rằng trẻ em được phép xem tivi mà không được bố mẹ cho phép.

3 I am in favor of the idea of V-ing ~ / the idea that S+V ~ Tôi ủng hộ ý kiến làm ~ / ý kiến rằng ~ I am in favor of the idea of building a public library in our town.
Tôi ủng hộ ý kiến xây một thư viện công công ở thi trấn của chúng ta.

I am in favor of the idea that schools should teach students about specific careers and jobs. Tôi ủng hộ \acute{y} kiến rằng nhà trưởng nên dạy cho học sinh về nghề nghiệp và công việc cụ thể.

4 I do not hold with V-ing ~ / the idea that S+V ~ Tôi không tán thành việc ~ / ý kiến cho rằng ~ I do not hold with developing nuclear weapons to protect our country.
Tôi không tán thành việc phát triển vũ khí hat nhân để bảo về đất nước của chúng ta.

I do not hold with the idea that businesses can do anything to gain a profit. Tôi không tán thành ý kiến cho rằng doanh nghiệp có thể làm bất cứ điều gì để sinh lãi.

5 I go along with ~ Tôi đổng ý với ~
I go along with the opinion that adults can enjoy games as much as children.
Tôi đổng ý với ý kiến cho rằng người lớn cũng thích chơi game như trẻ em vậy.

B Assertion

6 In my opinion / In my view, S+V ~ Theo ý kiến của tôi, ~ In my opinion, love is the most important emotion a person should possess. Theo ý kiến của tôi, tình yêu là xúc cảm quan trọng nhất mà con người phải có.

7 I firmly believe that S+V ~ Tôi tin chắc rằng ~

I firmly believe that people cannot live without companions.

Tôi tin chắc rằng người ta không thể sống nếu không có ban bè.

B It is evident that S+V ~ Ro rang rang ~

It is evident that every human being is dependent upon Mother Nature.

Rõ ràng rằng mọi người đều phụ thuộc vào Mẹ thiên nhiên.

9 There is no question / no doubt that S+V ~ Không có nghi ngờ rằng ~

There is no question that we should make a careful decision in order not to regret anything later.

Không có nghi ngờ rằng chúng ta nên quyết định cẩn trọng để khỏi phải hối tiếc về sau.

10 Personally, I think that S+V ~ Cá nhân tôi nghĩ rằng ~

Personally, I think that parents should not give their teenage children an allowance at all.

Cá nhân tôi nghĩ rằng bố me không nên cho con cái ở lưa tuổi thiếu niên tiều văt.

11 I contend that S+V ~ Tôi cho rằng ~

I contend that we should set aside some land for endangered animals.

Tôi cho rằng chúng ta nên dành ra một ít đất đại cho những động vật đang gặp nguy hiểm.

12 No one can deny that S+V ~ Không ai có thể phủ nhận rằng ~

No one can deny that people today put too much emphasis on personal appearance and fashion.

Không ai có thể phủ nhân rằng ngày nay người ta quá chú trong vào vẻ bề ngoài và thời trang.

C Summarization

13 To sum up / In summary, S+V ~ Tóm lai, ~

To sum up, mental health is as important as physical health.

Tóm lại, sức khỏe tinh thần cũng quan trọng như sức khỏe thể chất.

14 In short / In brief, S+V ~ Tóm lại, ~

In short, people are concerned about their quality of life as well as their lifespans nowadays.

Tóm lại, ngày nay người ta quan tâm đến chất lượng cuộc sống cũng như tuổi thọ tối đa của họ.

15 In conclusion, S+V ~ Cuối cùng, ~

In conclusion, I think fossil fuels will be replaced by renewable energy sources in the near future.

Cuối cùng, tôi nghĩ rằng nhiên liệu hóa thạch sẽ được thay thế bởi các nguồn năng lượng có thể tái tạo trong tương lai gần.

16 I have come to the conclusion that S+V ~ Tôi đã đi đến kết luận rằng ~

I have come to the conclusion that it is more important to give students prizes for their efforts than for their grades.

Tôi đã đi đến kết luận rằng tặng học sinh phần thường cho những cố gắng của họ thì quan trọng hơn cho điểm số của họ.

Check-Up

Using the given expressions, translate the following into English.

1	Tôi đồng ý rằng cảm giác thành công quan trọng hơn lương bổng. (1 agree that S+V \sim)
	* a feeling of accomplishment
2	Theo ý kiến của tôi, xe hơi đã làm lợi cho chúng ta nhiều hơn là làm hại. (In my opinion, S-V \sim)
	* do someone good/harm
3	Tóm lại, đọc tiểu thuyết hư cấu thì tốt cho sự phát triển cảm xúc của trẻ em. (To sum up. S+V \sim)
	* emotional development
4	Không có nghi ngờ rằng quyết định nhanh chóng thường cho chúng ta những câu trả lời sai. There is no question that $S+V\sim)$
	* make quick decisions
5	Rỗ ràng rằng mượn tiến của một người bạn có thể làm hại tình bạn đó. (It is evident that S+V \sim)
	* damage a friendship
6	Tôi tin chắc rằng cấm hút thuốc ở nơi công cộng là một quy định tốt. (I firmly believe that S+V \sim)
	* prohibit smoking
7	Tóm lại, thức ăn nấu ở nhà tốn ít tiền hơn thức ăn ở nhà hàng. (In short, S+V \sim)
	* home-made food
8	Tôi không tán thành ý kiến cho rằng người ta không cấn phải di du lịch vì người ta có thể khám phá thế giới qua mạng Internet. (I do not hold with the idea that S+V \sim)
	* explore the world

9	Tôi ủng hộ ý kiến cho rằng học sinh nên học ở trường nhiều hơn hai ngoại ngữ. (I am in favor of the idea that $S+V\simeq)$
	* learn a foreign language
10	Tôi không đồng ý với ý kiến cho rằng phát triển công nghệ tách con người ra khỗi nhau. (I disagree with \sim)
	* isolate ~ from ~
11	Tôi tin chắc rằng ô nhiễm nước là một trong những vấn để nghiêm trọng nhất mà chúng ta có. (I firmly believe that $S+V\sim)$
	* water pollution
12	Tôi đồng ý với ý kiến cho rằng nên hủy bỏ án tử hình. (I go along with the idea that $S+V\sim)$
	* capital punishment
13	Không có nghi ngờ rằng chúng ta có thể học được nhiều điều từ người lớn tuổi. (There is no doubt that S+V \sim)
	* the elderly
14	Cá nhân tôi nghĩ rằng đồng phục di học ngắn không cho học sinh thể hiện cá tính của chúng. (Personally, I think that S+V \sim
	* prevent someone from V-ing
15	Tôi không tán thành ý kiến cho rằng chính phủ không chịu một trách nhiệm nào cho sự nghèo đói. (I do not hold with the notion that $S+V\sim)$
	* be responsible for
16	Tôi đồng ý rằng giáo viên nên cho học sinh bài tập về nhà hàng ngày. (Lagree that $S+V\sim)$

17	Tóm lại, tôi thích ở nhà hơn đi chơi vào kỳ nghĩ. (In brief, S+V $\sim)$
	* prefer A to B
18	Tóm lại, cuối cùng con người kiếm tiền để được hạnh phúc. (In $\operatorname{summary}, \operatorname{S+V} \sim)$
	• in the end
19	Tôi đồng ý rằng chính phủ nên cấm quảng cáo rượu và thuốc lá trên tivi. (Lagree that S+V \sim)
	* prohibit
20	Tôi không đồng ý rằng học để có được kiến thức thì quan trọng hơn để phát triển tính sáng tạo. (I do not agree that S+V \sim)
	* develop creativity
21	Theo quan điểm của tôi, người ta có thể khỏe mạnh hơn nếu họ không ăn đồ ăn vặt. (In my view, S+V \sim)
	* junk food
22	Rỗ ràng rằng phim bạo lực có thể kích động hành ví hung hặng của thanh thiếu niên. (It is evident that S+V \sim)
	* incite aggressive behavior
23	Tôi tin chắc rằng dành thời gian với gia đình quan trọng hơn dành thời gian ở nơi làm việc. (I firmly believe that S+V \sim)
	* spend time at work
24	Tôi đồng ý với ý kiến cho rằng tổ tiên của chúng ta hưởng thụ cuộc sống nhiều hơn chúng ta. (I go along with the opinion that S+V \sim)
	*ancestors

Read the following questions, and complete the answers as shown in the example.

Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Parents are the best teachers.

- → I agree that parents are better teachers for their children than any other person for several reasons.
 - Có nhiều lý do khiến tôi đồng ý rằng cha mẹ là những giáo viên tốt của con cái hơn bất kì ai khác.

1	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? When people succeed, it is because of hard work. Luck has nothing to do with success.
\rightarrow	I do not hold with the idea that
	Tôi không tán thành ý kiến cho rằng người ta thành công do vận may, chứ không phải do làm việc cật lực.
2	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Watching television is bad for children.
→	I go along with the opinion that
	Tôi đồng ý với ý kiến cho rằng xem tivi có ảnh hưởng tiêu cực đối với trẻ em.
3	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? All students should be required to study art and music in secondary school.
→	I disagree that
	Tôi không đồng ý rằng học sinh trung học nên học nghệ thuật và âm nhạc như những môn học bắt buộc.
4	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Only people who earn a lot of money are successful.
\rightarrow	I am not in favor of the idea that
	Tôi không ủng hộ ý kiến cho rằng chỉ có người giàu mới có thể được xem là thành công.
5	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? A person's childhood years (the time from birth to twelve years of age) are the most important years of a person's life.
\rightarrow	l agree that
	Tôi đồng ý rằng thời thơ ấu là giai đoạn quan trọng nhất trong cuộc đời.

Re	ad the following questions, and complete the answers as shown in the example.
	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Universities should give the same amount of money to their students' sports activities as they give to their libraries. I firmly believe that sports activities are as important as libraries to university students.
	Tôi tin chắc rằng các hoạt động thể thao cũng quan trọng như thư viện đối với sinh viên đại học.
1	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Reading fiction (such as novels and short stories) is more enjoyable than watching movies.
→	It is evident that
	Rõ rằng rằng phim ảnh có tính giải trí như tiểu thuyết và truyện ngắn vậy.
2	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Teachers should be paid according to how much their students learn.
→	There is no question that
	Không có nghi ngờ rằng lương bổng của giáo viên nên được quyết định bởi thành quả của học sinh.
3	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Dancing plays an important role is cultures.
→	I contend that
	Tôi cho rằng múa đã đóng một vai trò to lớn trong việc làm phong phú nền văn hóa của chúng ta.
4	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Classmates have more influence on a child's success at school than parents do.
\rightarrow	No one can deny that
	Không ai có thể phủ nhận rằng thành tích học tập của trẻ em bị ảnh hưởng bởi bạn bè đồng trang lứa nhiều hơn so với bố me.

5 Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? People should read only those books

that are about real events, real people, and established facts.

Theo quan điểm của tôi, không có gì để người ta học từ những câu chuyện hư cấu câ.

120

→ In my view,

Ne	ad the following questions, and complete the answers as shown in the example.
	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Grades encourage students to learn. To sum up, grades motivate students to study harder by letting them know how much they have learned.
	Tóm lại, điểm số thúc đẩy sinh viên học tập chăm chỉ hơn bằng cách chỉ ra cho họ biết là họ đã học được bao nhiều.
1	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Most experiences in our lives that seemed difficult at the time become valuable lessons for the future.
\rightarrow	In short,
	Tóm lại, kinh nghiệm có được từ gian khổ trở thành nền tảng cho một tương lai thành công.
2	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Face-to-face communication is bette than other types of communication, such as letters, email, or telephone calls.
\rightarrow	I have come to the conclusion that
	Tôi đã đi đến kết luận rằng người ta có thể giao tiếp hiệu quả hơn chỉ khi họ gặp nhau trực tiếp.
3	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? With the help of technology, students nowadays can learn more information and learn it more quickly.
\rightarrow	In summary,
	Tóm lại, công nghệ hiện đại giúp sinh viên học được nhiều điều hơn trong một khoảng thời gian ngắn.
4	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? People should sometimes do things that they do not enjoy doing.
\rightarrow	In brief,
	Tóm lại, bạn không cần thấy áp lực phải làm những điều bạn không muốn.
5	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? People should read only those books that are about real events, real people, and established facts.
\rightarrow	In conclusion,
	Cuối cùng, chúng ta có thể học được những bài học vớ giá từ sách truyện hư cấu.

Writing Challenge

Read the following questions, and write two or three sentences on what you think about each	ntences on what you think about each	ns, and write two or three senten	ead the following questions
---	--------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------

	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? The most important aspect of a job is the money a person earns. Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.
	Agree I agree that money is the most significant reason why people get a job. Because we
	cannot buy food, clothes, or other necessities without money, we need to get a job to afford
	our expenses.
No. of the last	Disagree Not every person wants to have a job for the money. It is evident that there are
	more important reasons for having a job, such as what kind of job it is, what kinds of people
	you work with, and how much you like the job.
00	
	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Universities should give the same amount of money to their students' sports activities as they give to their libraries. Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.
	Agree
	Disagree
	Sistery of the second of the s
	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? The best way to travel is in a group led by a tour guide. Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.
	Agree
	Disagree

3	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? High schools should allow students to study the courses that they want to study. Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.
	Agree
	Disagree
4	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Different clothes influence the way people behave. Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.
	Agree
	Disagree
5	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Television, newspapers, magazines, and other media pay too much attention to the personal lives of famous people such as public figures and celebrities. Use specific reasons and details to explain your opinion.
	Agree
	Disagree

Agree / Disagree II

A Agreement & Disagreement

1 I support the idea that S+V ~ Tôi ủng hộ ý kiến rằng ~ I support the idea that all teachers should be required to update their knowledge every few years

Tôi ủng hộ ý kiến rằng vài năm một lần tất cả giáo viên phải cập nhật kiến thức của mình.

- 2 I object to the notion that S+V ~ Tôi phản đối ý kiến cho rằng ~ I object to the notion that people should become vegetarians to live longer. Tôi phản đối ý kiến cho rằng người ta nên trở thành người ân chay để sống lâu hơn.
- 3 I do not think it is ~ to-V ~ Tôi không nghĩ rằng làm gì đó thì/là ~ I do not think it is effective to watch foreign movies in order to learn about foreign cultures. Tôi không nghĩ rằng xem phim ngoại quốc để hiểu về các nên văn hóa nước ngoài là hiệu quả.
- 4 I question whether S+V ~ Tôi nghi ngở không biết ~ I question whether the Internet has really improved our lives. Tôi nghi ngờ không biết mang Internet có thật sự cải thiện cuộc sống của chúng ta hay không.
- 5 I am against the opinion that S+V ~ Tôi phản đối ý kiến cho rằng ~ I am against the opinion that the world would be better if there were time machines.
 Tôi phản đối ý kiến cho rằng thế giới sẽ tốt hơn nếu có những cổ máy thời gian.

R Cause & Effect

- There are several reasons for ~ / why S+V ~ Có một số lý do giải thích ~ / tại sao ~ There are several reasons for people living in society instead of living alone.
 Có một số lý do giải thích việc con người sống trong xã hội thay vì sống một mình.
- 7 As a result of X, S+V ~ Do/Nhờ X, ~
 As a result of air pollution, many people prefer living in suburban areas to living downtown.
 Do ô nhiễm không khí, nhiều người thích sống ở những khu vực ngoại ô hơn là sống ở trung tâm thành phố.
- 8 Consequently, S+V ~ Do vậy, ~ Consequently, it is better for young adults to live alone than to live with their parents. Do vậy, sống một mình thì tốt cho thanh niên hơn so với sống cùng hổ mẹ.

C Exemplification

9 For instance / For example, S+V ~ Vi du, ~ For instance, it is common sense that pregnant women should not drink.

Ví du, phu nữ có thai không nên uống rươu là lễ thường tình.

To give you an idea, I will ~ Để bạn dễ hình dung, tôi sẽ ~
To give you an idea, I will present an example of an unexpected natural disaster.
Để ban dễ hình dung, tôi sẽ trình bày một ví dụ về một thảm họa thiên nhiên bất ngờ.

D Citation

11 According to X, S+V ~ Theo X, ~

According to a UN report, livestock generates more CO₂ emissions than cars.

Theo báo cáo của Liên Hiệp Quốc, gia súc thải ra nhiều khí các-bon-nic hơn xe hơi.

12 It is said that S+V ~ Người ta nói rằng ~

It is said that a person brought up in a large family is sociable.

Người ta nói rằng người lớn lên trong một gia đình đông con sẽ có tính hòa đồng.

13 It is reported that S+V ~ Người ta báo cáo rằng ~

It is reported that the majority of high school students have their own computers.

Người ta báo cáo rằng đa số học sinh trung học đều có máy vi tính riêng.

14 There is a saying, "S+V ~." Có câu nói rằng "~".

There is a saying, "Don't put off what you can do today until tomorrow."

Có câu nói rằng "Đừng để lai ngày mai những gì bạn có thể làm ngày hôm nay.".

15 In my experience, S+V ~ Theo kinh nghiêm của tôi, ~

In my experience, those who exercise every day are usually punctual.

Theo kinh nghiệm của tôi, những ai tập thể dục hàng ngày thường rất đúng giờ.

16 Studies indicate that S+V ~ Nghiên cứu chỉ ra rằng ~

Studies indicate that violent movies and juvenile delinquency have a strong connection.

Nghiên cứu chỉ ra rằng phim bao lực và tôi pham ở lựa tuổi thanh thiếu niên có một mối liên hệ chặt chẽ với nhau.

Using the given patterns, translate the following into English.

1	Tôi ủng hộ ý kiên cho rằng học sinh có thể phát triển trí tướng tượng của mình bằng cách đọc tiểu thuyết. (I support the idea that S+V ~)						
	* develop one's imagination						
2	Tôi không nghĩ rằng trường đại học không thể cấp học bổng cho mọi sinh viên. (I do not think it is \sim to-V \sim)						
	* give a scholarship						
3	Do toàn cầu hóa, ngày nay người ta không cảm thấy nhiều khác biệt văn hóa. $(As\ a\ result\ of\ \sim.\ S+V\ \sim)$						
	* cultural difference						
4	Có câu nói rằng "Người bạn trong lúc khó khăn mới là người bạn thật sự.". (There is a saying, "S+V \sim .")						
	* in need						
5	Theo kinh nghiệm của tôi, bố mẹ có thể là những người bạn thân nhất với con cái bởi vì họ luôn đứng về phía con cái $(\text{In my experience, S+V}\sim)$						
	* take one's side						
6	Tôi phản đối ý kiến cho rằng phụ nữ nên ở nhà chăm sốc con cái. $(I \text{ am against the opinion that } \sim)$						
	* take care of						
7	Tôi nghi ngờ không biết cho phép con cái xem quảng cáo trên tivi có mang tính giáo dục hay không. (I question whether S+V \sim)						
	* allow someone to-V						
8	$\label{eq:Vi_du} Vi_{\rm du}, những người xem thụ động thích những chương trình giải trí hơn những chương trình nhiều thông tir. \\ (For example, S+V \sim)$						
	* informative/entertaining programs						

9	\vec{De} bạn để hình dung, tới sẽ giải thích (cách mà) thái độ lạc quan có thể thay đổi cuộc sống của một người như thế nào. (To give you an idea, I will \sim)
	* an optimistic attitude
10	Tôi phản đối ý kiến cho rằng những người liều lĩnh mới là những người có thể có được những cơ hội tốt. (Lobject to the notion that $S+V\sim$)
	* take a risk
11	Tôi ủng hộ ý kiến cho rằng tham gia các hoạt động ngoại khóa là điều quan trọng. (I support the idea that S+V \sim)
	* extracurricular activities
12	Do vậy, tôi cho rằng những người bị những môn thể thao nguy hiểm cuốn hút không thể chịu được những công việc thường làm hàng ngày của họ. $(Consequently, S+V \sim)$
	* daily routines
13	Tôi phản đối ý kiến cho rằng người ta không học được gì từ kinh nghiệm của mình. (I am against the opinion that $S+V\sim)$
	* learn ~ from one's experience
14	Người ta nói rằng mọi người phải có khả năng tự chăm sóc bản thân khi họ bị cô lập. $({\rm It}\ {\rm is\ said\ that\ S+V}\sim)$
	* be isolated
15	Tôi phản đối ý kiến cho rằng nghe nhạc pop là lãng phí thời gian. $(I \text{ object to the notion that } S+V\sim)$
	* popular music
16	Người ta báo cáo rằng nhiều bậc cha mẹ bắt con cái đọc tiểu sử. (It is reported that S+V \sim)
	*a biography

17	Tôi nghi ngờ không biết người ta có công nhận tẩm quan trọng của giáo dục đạo đức hay không. (I question whether S+V \sim)						
	* moral education						
18	Để bạn để hình dung, tôi sẽ nêu ra vài lý do giải thích tại sao chúng tôi cẩn một bệnh viện $\ddot{\sigma}$ cộng đồng chúng tôi (To give you an idea, I will \sim)						
	* give reasons						
19	Có một số lý do giải thích tại sao một số sinh viên học ngôn ngữ thành công hơn học các môn khác. (There are several reasons why S+V \sim)						
	* be successful in						
20	Theo kinh nghiệm của tôi, không phải lúc nào người ta cũng nói thật. (In my experience, S+V \sim)						
	* tell the truth						
21	Ví dụ, chúng ta có thể quan sát động vật ở khoảng cách gắn trong các sở thú. (For instance, S+V \sim)						
	* at a short distance						
22	Tôi phản đối ý kiến cho rằng viện bảo tàng là những nơi tốt nhất để trẻ em có thể hiểu về tố tiên của chúng. (I am against the opinion that $S+V\sim$)						
	*ancestors						
23	Nhờ phát minh ra bóng đèn tròn, người ta có thể đọc sách ban đêm mà không bị hồng thị lực. (As a result of X, S+V \sim)						
	* light bulb						
24	Nghiên cứu chỉ ra rằng đổ ăn vặt là một trong những nguyên nhân chính của bệnh béo thì. (Studies indicate that $\rm S+V\sim)$						
	* obesity						

Writing Practice

A	Re	ad the following questions, and complete the answers as shown in the example.
		Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Schools should ask students to evaluate their teachers.
		→ I support the idea that students should participate in the process of evaluating their teachers.
		Tôi ủng hộ ý kiến cho rằng sinh viên nên tham gia vào quá trình đánh giá giáo viên của họ.
	1	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Playing games teaches us about life.
	\rightarrow	I object to the notion that
		Tôi phản đối ý kiến cho rằng chơi game không có gì liên quan đến cách sống của người ta cả.
	2	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? It is better to be a member of a group than to be the leader of a group.
	\rightarrow	I do not think
		Tôi không nghĩ rằng làm thành viên của nhóm thì có lợi hơn đứng đầu nhóm.
	3	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Businesses should hire employees for their entire lives.
	\rightarrow	I support the idea that
		Tôi ủng hộ ý kiến cho rằng các công ty nên bảo đẩm thuê mướn nhân viên trọn đời.
r.	4	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? There is nothing that young people can teach older people.
	\rightarrow	I am against the opinion that
		Tôi phần đối ý kiến cho rằng người lớn tuổi hơn không thể học các bài học từ những người trẻ tuổi hơn.
	5	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? One should never judge a person by external appearances.
	\rightarrow	I support the idea that

Tôi ủng hộ ý kiến cho rằng sự xét đoán của chúng ta về ai đó không nên dựa trên vẻ bên ngoài của họ như thế nào.

B Read the following questions, and complete the answers as shown in the example.

Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Modern technology is creating a single world culture.

- As a result of the development of modern technology, such as TV and the Internet, every culture is losing its own characteristics and is starting to resemble others.
 Do sự phát triển của công nghệ hiện đại như tivi và Internet, mỗi nền văn hóa dang dánh mất dấn những nét đặc trưng riêng của minh và bắt đầu giống các nền văn hóa khác.
- 1 Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Parents or other adult relatives should make important decisions for their older (15- to 18-year-old) teenage children.
- → It is said that

Người ta nói rằng thanh thiếu niên học cách đưa ra những quyết định quan trọng hoặc bằng cách phạm sai lầm hoặc qua kinh nghiệm của chính họ.

- 2 Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Boys and girls should attend separate schools.
- → According to

Theo nghiên cứu gần đây, việc dạy học cho cả nam lẫn nữ có ích cho nam sinh lẫn nữ sinh hơn vì nhiều lý do.

- 3 Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Advertising can tell you a lot about a country.
- → Consequently.

Do vậy, chúng ta có thể có được nhiều thông tin về một quốc gia bằng cách xem các quảng cáo về quốc gia đó.

- 4 Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? One should never judge a person by external appearances.
- → It is reported that

Người ta báo cáo rằng vẻ bên ngoài không đáng tin cậy khi bạn xét đoán tính cách của một người.

- 5 Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Children should begin learning a foreign language as soon as they start school.
- → There are several reasons

Có một số lý do giải thích tại sao trẻ em nên được dạy một ngoại ngữ ở trường tiểu học.

C	Re	ad the following questions, and complete the answers as shown in the example.
		The expression "Never, never give up" means to keep trying and never stop working for your goals. Do you agree or disagree with this statement?
		→ In my experience, steady efforts to achieve my goals have been always rewarded.
		Theo kinh nghiệm của tôi, những nỗ lực liên tục để đạt được mục tiêu luôn luôn được đền dấp xứng đáng.
	1	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? People behave differently when they wear different clothes.
	\rightarrow	To give you an idea as to
		Để bạn dễ hình dung tại sao người ta được đối xử khác nhau khi họ mặc quần áo khác nhau, tôi sẽ trình bày hai ví dụ.
	2	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Businesses should hire employees for their entire lives.
	\rightarrow	For instance,
		Ví dụ, không ai sẽ làm việc cật lực để nâng cao năng suất nếu công ty không bao giờ sa thải nhân viên cả.
	3	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? It is better for children to grow up in the countryside than in a big city.
	\rightarrow	To give you an idea,
		$\vec{D}\vec{e}$ bạn để hình dung, tôi sẽ thảo luận chuyện trẻ em có thể vui thú với tự nhiên nhiều biết bao khi sống ở những khu vực miền quê.
1 -	4	Some people think that human needs for farmland, housing, and industry are more important than saving land for endangered animals. Do you agree or disagree with this point of view?
	\rightarrow	In my experience,
		Theo kinh nghiệm của tôi, luôn luôn có những hậu quả xấu bất cứ khi nào chúng ta tàn phá hệ sinh thái.

5 Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Television has destroyed

Vì dụ, trẻ em có thể chia sẽ ý kiến của chúng về những gì chúng xem trên tivi với bạn bè.

communication between friends and family.

→ For instance,

131

Writing Challenge

Read the	following	auestions.	and write	two or thre	e sentences	on what v	you think at	out each one.

Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? A person should never make an important

decision alone. Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

Agree I support the idea that some decisions are too important to be made by one person.
People can make better decisions if they discuss their problems with their family and friends.
Disagree I am against the idea that a person should consult with others before making an
important decision. Since every person should be responsible for his own decision in the end,
you have to make a decision by yourself.
Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Technology has made the world a better place to live in. Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.
Agree
Disagree
Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Attending a live performance (for example, a play, concert, or sporting event) is more enjoyable than watching the same event on television. Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.
Agree
Disagree

2

3	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? It is more important for students to study history and literature than it is for them to study science and mathematics. Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.
	Agree
	Disagree
4	Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Playing a game is fun only when you win. Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.
	Agree
	Disagree
5	It is sometimes said that borrowing money from a friend can harm or damage the friendship. Do you agree? Why or why not? Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.
	Agree
	Disagree

75 Preference I

A Preference

- 1 I prefer A to B Tôi thích A hơn B I prefer living in the countryside to living in a city. Tôi thích sống ở miền quê hơn sống ở một thành phố.
- 2 Given the choice between A and B, I would choose ~ Néu dược chọn giữa A và B, tôi sẽ chọn ~ Given the choice between history and science, I would choose science.
 Néu được chọn giữa lịch sử và khoa học, tôi sẽ chọn khoa học.
- 3 Between A and B, my preference is ~ Giữa A và B, tôi thích ~ hơn. Between history and natural science, my preference is history. Giữa lịch sử và khoa học tự nhiên, tôi thích lịch sử hơn.
- 4 In my opinion, it is better to-V ~ Theo ý kiến của tôi, làm gì đó thì tốt hơn ~ In my opinion, it is better to spend one's free time outdoors than indoors. Theo ý kiến của tôi, dành thời gian rảnh rỗi của mình ở ngoài trời thì tốt hơn là ở trong nhà.
- My view on X is that S+V ~ Ý kiến của tôi về X là (rằng) ~
 My view on the recent slow economy is that unemployment is the biggest problem.
 Ý kiến của tôi về nền kinh tế trì trê gắn đây là nan thất nghiệp đang là vấn để lớn nhất.

B Comparison

- 6 Compared with X, S+V ~ So với X, ~
 Compared with a century ago, nowadays people spend less time with their families.
 So với cách đây một thế kỷ, ngày nay người ta dành cho gia đình ít thời gian hơn.
- 7 A cannot compare with B A không thể so sánh với B Animals cannot compare with humans because the former do not have high levels of intelligence.
 - Động vật không thể so sánh với con người bởi vì động vật không có các cấp độ thông minh cao
 - A is similar to B A tương tự với/như B Movie theaters are similar to shopping centers in that both of them are always crowded. Rạp chiếu phim tương tự với trung tâm mua sắm ở điểm cả hai chỗ đều luôn luôn đông người.

9 Similarly / Likewise, S+V ~ Tương tư vậy. ~

My parents did everything they could to educate me. Similarly, I will do the same with my children in the future.

Bố mẹ tôi đã làm mọi điều họ có thể để giáo dục tôi. Tương tự vậy, tôi sẽ làm như thế với con cái của tôi trong tương lai.

10 In the same way, S+V ~ Giong như vày, ~

We expect foreigners to respect our culture and customs. In the same way, we also should recognize their cultures and customs.

Chúng ta yêu cấu người nước ngoài tôn trọng văn hóa và tập quán của chúng ta. Giống như vậy, chúng ta cũng phải công nhận văn hóa và tập quán của họ.

11 Unlike X, S+V ~ Không như X. ~

Unlike adults, children are easily influenced by their environment.

Không như người lớn, trẻ em dễ bị ảnh hưởng bởi môi trường.

12 On the contrary, S+V ~ Trái lai, ~

Many poor countries are suffering from food shortages. On the contrary, some rich countries are spending a lot of money to dispose of food waste.

Nhiều quốc gia nghèo đang chịu những thiếu hụt thực phẩm. Trái lại, nhiều quốc gia giàu có chi nhiều tiền để xử lý rác thải thực phẩm.

C Concession

13 Although / Though / Even though S+V ~, S+V ~ Mac du ~, ~

Although some people know that eating at restaurants is often unhealthy, they love to eat out. Mặc dù một số người biết rằng ăn ở các nhà hàng thường không được vệ sinh, họ vẫn thích ăn nhà hàng.

14 In spite of / Despite ~, S+V ~ Mặc dù/Bất chấp ~, ~

In spite of their differences, I still consider violent movies and junk foods to be similar. Mác dù có nhiều điểm khác nhau, tôi vẫn xem phim bao lực và đổ ăn vặt tương tự nhau.

15 Despite the fact that S+V ~, S+V ~ Bất chấp chuyện/Mặc dù ~, ~

Despite the fact that parents are advised not to allow their children to watch violent movies, some parents let their children watch anything.

Mặc dù các bậc cha mẹ được khuyên là không cho phép con cái xem phim bạo lực, một số bậc cha mẹ vẫn để con cái xem bất cứ thứ gì.

16 Nevertheless / Nonetheless / Even so, S+V ~ Tuy vây, ~

Books are an important means to gain knowledge. Nevertheless, some kinds of knowledge can be acquired only through real experiences.

Sách là phương tiện quan trọng để thu thập kiến thức. Tuy vậy, một số loại kiến thức chỉ có thể có được thông qua các trai nghiệm thực tế.

Check-Up

Using the given expressions, translate the following into English.

1	Nếu được chọn giữa nhạc cổ điển và nhạc pop, tối sẽ chọn nhạc pop. (Given the choice between A and B, I would choose ~)
	* classical music
2	\dot{Y} kiến của tôi về các quy định của nhà trường là sinh viên nên tham gia vào quá trình soạn thảo các quy định đó. (My view on X is that S+V ~)
	* be involved in
3	Tôi thích đi với bạn bề hơn đi với gia đình bởi vì đi chơi với bạn bề thì vui hơn. (I prefer A to B)
	* hang out with
4	Con người cần những cản nhà tiện nghi để sống. Tương tự vậy, động vật đang gặp nguy hiểm cần những chỗ an toà để sống. (Similarly, S+V \sim)
	* endangered animals
5	$ \text{Xem một sự kiện thể thao không thể so sánh với chơi thể thao được. } (A \ \text{cannot compare with } \mathbf{B}) = -\frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{1}{2} \right) \left(\frac{1}{$
	* a sporting event
6	Mặc dù có nhiều phát triển y học, con người vẫn chịu nhiều bệnh tật. (In spite of X, S+V \sim)
	* suffer from
7	Ngoạn ngoặn thì tương tự với trung thành bởi vì người trung thành luôn luôn ngoạn ngoặn. (A is similar to B)
	* obedience / loyalty
8	Bất chấp những lợi ích của một trường trung học mới, thay vi thế tôi vẫn muốn có một trung tâm mua sắm mới tro cộng đồng của chúng tôi. (Despite $X,S+V\sim$)
	* want to-V

9	Vào một ngày lạnh lẽo, ở nhà có lẽ để chịu. Tuy vậy, tôi thích đi chơi hơn ở trong nhà. (Nevertheless, S+V \sim)
	* stay ndoors
10	Mặc dù sinh viên có một số lớp mà họ không muốn học, họ vẫn phải học tất cả chúng. (Although S+V \sim S+V \sim)
	* be required to-V
11	Mặc dù ngôn ngữ và văn hóa khác nhau, chúng ta vẫn có thể có những người bạn thân là người ngoại quốc. (Despite the fact that $S+V\sim$)
	*make friends
12	Trẻ em rất thích dành phần lớn thời gian để chơi game. Tuy vậy, bạn nên cấm chúng không được chơi những game này. (Nonetheless, $S+V\sim$)
	* prohibit someone from V-ing
13	So với thành phố, miền quê tốt cho sự phát triển cảm xúc của trẻ em hơn. $(Compared\ with\ X,\ S+V\sim)$
	* emotional development
14	Giữa một người có thái độ lạc quan và một người có thái độ bi quan, tôi thích người lạc quan hơn. (Between A and B, my preference is \sim)
	* an optimistic/a pessimistic attitude
15	Không như xe hơi, tàu lửa là một phương tiện giao thông hiệu quả hơn. $(Unlike~X,S+V\sim)$
	* a means of transportation
16	Tôi thích làm việc trong một nhóm hơn làm việc độc lập bởi vì tôi có thể chia sẽ ý kiến với các thành viên khác. (I pr $_{\rm v}$ for Λ to B)

working on a team

17	\acute{Y} kiến của tôi về vấn đề này là những người dễ hòa đồng thường hòa hợp tốt với người khác. (My view on X is that S+V \sim)
	* get along well with
18	Quảng cáo rất quan trọng trong lĩnh vực kinh doanh. Tuy vậy, nó không thể thay thế cho chất lượng của sản phẩm. (Even so, S+V \sim)
	* be a substitute for
19	Tình yêu không thể so sánh với bất cứ điều gì khác bởi vì người ta không thể hạnh phúc nếu không cố tình yêu. (A cannot compare with B)
	* without
20	Một cuộc sống không có sự căng thẳng thì tương tự như ngủ trong suốt cuộc đời mình. (A is similar to B)
	* stress-free
21	Mặc dù tuổi thọ cao, người ta vẫn không nỗ lực nhiều để duy trì sức khỏe thể chất của họ. (In spire of X, S+V \sim)
	* life expectancy
22	Học nhóm có thể tiết kiệm cho bạn nhiều thời gian. Trái lại, kết quả có thể là bạn bị sao nhâng va chỉ tán gẫu. (On the contrary, S+V \sim)
	* end up V-ing
23	Tôi thích ăn ở nhà hàng hơn nấu ăn ở nhà bởi vì ăn nhà hàng tiện lợi hơn. $(I \text{ prefer A to B})$
	* eat out
24	Bạn không thể xét đoán một cuốn sách qua trang bia của nó. Giống như vậy, bạn không thể hiểu một người qua về bên ngoài được. (In the same way, $S+V\sim$)
	* judge – by ~

Writing Practice

A	Re	ad the following questions, and complete the answers as shown in the example.
		Some people prefer to get up early in the morning and start their day's work. Others prefer to get up later in the day and work until late at night. Which do you prefer?
		→ I prefer being a morning person to being a night person because I can have plenty of time to read some books in the morning.
		Tôi thích là người của buổi sáng hơn là người của ban đêm vì vào buổi sáng tôi có thể có nhiều thời gian để đọc sách.
	1	Some people are always in a hurry to go places and get things done. Other people prefer to take their time and live life at a slower pace. Which lifestyle do you think is better?
	\rightarrow	Given the choice between
		Nếu được chọn giữa sống với nhịp độ nhanh và sống với nhịp độ chậm, tôi sẽ chọn sống với nhịp độ nhanh.
	2	Some people prefer to live in places that have the same weather or climate all year long. Others like to live in areas where the weather changes several times a year. Which do you prefer?
	\rightarrow	In my opinion, it is better
		Theo ý kiến của tôi, sống ở nơi tôi có thể hưởng được các mùa khác nhau tốt hơn là sống ở nơi mà khí hậu chẳng thay đổi chút nào.
	3	You have been told that the dormitory rooms at your university must be shared by two students. Would you rather have the university assign a student to share a room with you, or would you rather choose your own roommate?
	\rightarrow	I prefer
		Tôi thích sống cùng phòng với bạn tôi hơn là sống cùng phòng với một người lạ.
	4	Some people prefer to plan activities for their free time very carefully. Others choose not to make any plans at all for their free time. Which do you think is better?
	\rightarrow	Between
		Giữa việc lên kế hoạch trước cho các hoạt động lúc rảnh rỗi và vui thú với thời gian rảnh rỗi mà không có một kế hoạch nào, tôi thích lập kế hoạch trước hơn.

Ý kiến của tội về vấn để này là thiếu niên thường bị anh hưởng bởi gia đình nhiều hơn so với ban bè.

→ My view on this issue is that

5 Some people think families are the most important influence on young adults. Others think friends are the most important influence on young adults. Which view do you agree with? Read the following questions, and complete the answers as shown in the example.

Some high schools require their students to wear school uniforms. Other high schools permit students to decide what to wear to school. Which policy do you think is better?

Compared to students who wear uniforms, students who can wear whatever they want are often more creative.

So với các sinh viên mặc đồng phục thì các sinh viên được tự do chọn cách ăn mặc thường sáng tạo hơn.

1	Some people prefer to spend their free time outdoors. Other people prefer to spend their leisure time indoors. Which way of spending free time do you think is better?
→	cannot compare with
	Xét về cách sử dụng thời gian rảnh rỗi, các hoạt động trong nhà không thể so sánh với các hoạt động ngoài trời.
2	When people need to complain about a product or poor service, some prefer to complain in writing, and others prefer to complain in person. Which way do you think is better?
→	From my point of view,
	Theo quan điểm của tôi, khi bạn không hài lòng với một sản phẩm hoặc dịch vụ nào đó, viết thư than phiến cũng tương tự như không làm gì cả.
3	Some students like classes where their teachers lecture in class. Other students prefer classes where the students do some of the talking. Which type of class do you prefer?
\rightarrow	Unlike
	Không như những giờ thảo luận, phần lớn các giờ thuyết trình đều nhàm chán.
4	Some students prefer to study alone. Others prefer to study with a group of students. Which do you prefer?
→	In my experience,
	Theo kinh nghiệm của tôi, học với bạn bè tương tự như đọc ngược một cuốn sách vậy.
5	Some people think families are the most important influence on young adults. Others think

friends are the most important influence on young adults. Which view do you agree with?

Nhiều thanh thiếu niên không kể cho bố mẹ nghe về cuộc sống của họ. Trái lại, họ nói chuyện và dành phản lớn

thời gian của ho với ban bè.

On the contrary,

Read the following questions, and complete the answers as shown in the example.

Some people prefer a high-paying job with long hours that would give them little time with their family and friends. Others prefer a lower-paying job with shorter hours that would give them more time with their family and friends. Which job would you choose?

- In spite of some economic sacrifice, I would choose to work shorter hours.
 Cho dù phải hy sinh một vài lời ích kinh tế, tôi vẫn chọn làm việc ít giờ hơn.
- 1 Some people prefer to learn by reading about things. Others say it is better to learn by listening to people talk about things. Which method of learning do you think is better?
- → Although

Mặc dù tôi công nhận đọc sách là một cách học tốt, tôi cho rằng học bằng cách lắng nghe người khác thì hiệu quả hơn.

2 Some movies are serious and are designed to make the audience think. Other movies are designed primarily to amuse and entertain. Which type of movie do you prefer?

Nevertheless.

Một số người nói rằng phim nghiêm túc thì nhàm chán. Tuy vậy, tôi thích những cuốn phim khiến cho tôi suy nghĩ.

3 Some people prefer to work for a large company. Others prefer to work for a small company. Which option do you think is better?

Even so.

Bạn có thể có mối quan hệ thân thiết hơn với bạn đồng nghiệp ở một công ty nhỏ. Tuy vậy, tôi sẽ không chọn một công ty nhỏ bởi vì công ty nhỏ dễ bị phá sản hơn công ty lớn.

4 Some people spend their entire lives in one place. Others move a number of times throughout their lives, looking for a better job, house, community, or even climate. Which do you prefer?

Nevertheless.

Sống ở một nơi trong suốt cuộc đời có thể có một số điều lợi. Tuy vậy, tôi thích chuyển từ chỗ này sang chỗ khác để có được một mỗi trường tốt hơn.

- 5 Some people think children should begin their formal education at a very early age. Others believe young children should spend most of their time playing. Which view do you agree with?
- → Despite the fact that

Mặc dũ trẻ em có thể học được nhiều điều ở trường, tôi cho rằng điều quan trọng hơn đối với trẻ em là chơi đùa với ban bè của chúng.

Writing Challenge

Read the following questions, and write two or three sentences on what you think about each one.

Some people prefer to live in a small town. Others prefer to live in a big city. Which place would you prefer to live in? Use specific reasons and details to support your answer.
Live in a big city: It seems attractive that I could make close relationships with my neighbors
if I lived in a small town. Even so, I still want to live in a big city. One advantage of a big city is
that there are so many cultural events, so we can always find something to do to amuse ourselves.
Live in a small town: Between living in a small town and living in a big city, my preference is
the former for safety reasons. In a big city, people neither know who lives next door to them,
nor are they concerned about their neighbors' safety. Thus, I would like to live in a small town
where everyone looks after one another.
Some people like to travel with a companion. Other people prefer to travel alone. Which do you prefer? Use specific reasons and examples to support your choice. Travel with a companion:
Travel alone:
Some people like to do only what they already do well. Other people prefer to try new things and take risks. Which do you prefer? Use specific reasons and examples to support your choice.
Do what you already do well:
Try new things:

2

3	Some people think that they can learn better by themselves than with a teacher. Others think that it is always better to have a teacher. Which do you think is better? Use specific reasons to develop your essay.
	Learn by yourself:
	Learn from a teacher:
4	Some people think governments should spend as much money as possible exploring outer space (for example, traveling to the moon and to the other planets). Other people disagree and think governments should spend this money for our basic needs on Earth. Which of these two opinions do you agree with? Use specific reasons and details to support your answer.
	Basic needs on Earth:
	Exploring outer space:
5	Some people like doing work by hand. Others prefer using machines. Which do you prefer? Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.
	Work by hand:
	Work with machines:

7 Preference II

A Preference

- 1 A is preferable to B A thì thích hơn B In my opinion, hiking in the mountains is preferable to reading a book. Theo ý kiến của tôi, di đã ngoại ở vùng núi thì thích hơn đọc sách.
- 2 I would rather ~ than ~ Tôi thích/thà ~ (còn)hơn ~
 If I lived in a big city, I would rather take the subway than drive a car.
 Néu tôi sống ở một thành phố lớn, tôi thà đi tàu điện ngắm còn hơn là lái xe hơi.
- From my point of view, it is -er / more ~ to-V ~ Theo quan diểm của tôi, làm gi đó thì ~ hơn ~ From my point of view, it is cheaper to eat out than to cook at home by myself.
 Theo quan điểm của tôi, ẩn nhà hàng thì rẻ hơn tư tay tôi nấu ở nhà.

B Assumption

- 4 Presumably, S+V ~ Cô lê là ~ Presumably, my next-door neighbor does not even know my name. Cô lê là người hàng xóm ở canh nhà tôi thâm chí còn không biết tên tôi nữa.
- 5 Let's assume that S+V ~ Giả sử là ~ Let's assume that current scientific technology will change our lifestyles completely within a few years.
 - Giả sử là công nghệ khoa học hiện tại sẽ thay đổi hoàn toàn cách sống của chúng ta trong vòng một vài năm nữa.
- Suppose S+V ~ Giả sử là ~
 Suppose some decisions can be made more quickly than others.
 Giả sử là một số quyết định có thể được đưa ra nhanh hơn những quyết định khác.
- 7 I wish S+V ~ Uớc gì ~ I wish I had learned martial arts when I was young so that I could travel alone without fear

Ước gi tôi đã học võ khi còn trẻ để bây giờ tôi có thể đi lại một mình mà không thấy sơ hãi.

8 If S+V-ed ~, S+would / could+V ~ Nếu ~, ~ If I had a large sum of money, I would build a library for children in my hometown. Nếu tôi có một số tiến lớn, tôi sẽ xây một thư viện dành cho trẻ em ở thành phố quê hương của tôi

C Elaboration

9 Moreover, S+V ~ Hơn nữa, ~

People work hard to make money. Moreover, some people work overtime on weekends.

Người ta làm việc chăm chỉ để kiếm tiền. Hơn nữa, một số người còn làm việc thêm giờ vào những ngày cuối tuẩn.

10 In addition, S+V ~ Ngoài ra, ~

Regular exercise is good for your health. In addition, it is the best way to lose weight. Tap thể dục đều dân thị tốt cho sức khỏe của ban. Ngoài ra, đó là cách tốt nhất để giảm cân.

11 Aside from X, S+V ~ Ngoài/Trừ X ra, ~

Aside from their relationships with others, introverted people are usually not good at giving presentations in front of others.

Ngoài mối quan hệ của họ với người khác ra, những người sống nội tâm thường không giỏi việc trình bày trước mặt người khác.

12 In other words, S+V ~ Nói cách khác, ~

Man is a social animal. In other words, all of us need friends to maintain normal lives.

Con người là động vật mang tính xã hội. Nói cách khác, tất cả chúng ta đều cần bạn bè để duy trì cuộc sống bình thường.

13 More importantly, S+V ~ Quan trong hon, ~

More importantly, air pollution has caused the greenhouse effect.

Quan trọng hơn, ô nhiễm không khí đã gây ra hiệu ứng nhà kính.

14 In particular, S+V ~ Đặc biệt, ~

I like almost all kinds of sports. In particular, cycling is my favorite sport.

Tôi thích hầu như tất cả các môn thể thao. Đặc biệt, đua xe đạp là môn thể thao ưa thích của tôi.

15 In consideration of X, S+V ~ Xét đến X, ~

In consideration of the benefits of short vacations, I would rather have them frequently instead of one long vacation.

Xét đến lợi ích của những kỳ nghỉ ngắn, tôi thích có được những kỳ nghỉ như vậy thường xuyên thay vì có một kỳ nghỉ dài.

16 As we have seen, S+V ~ Như chúng ta đã thấy, ~

As we have seen, modern technologies such as the Internet and mobile communications have changed our lives quite profoundly.

Như chúng ta đã thấy, công nghệ hiện đại như mạng Internet và truyền thông di động đã thay đổi rất sâu sắc cuộc sống của chúng ta.

Check-Up

Using the given expressions, translate the following into English.

1	Ngoài việc chơi game ra, trẻ em thích xem tivi hơn là đọc sách. (Aside from X . $S+V\sim$)
	* video games
2	Một thái độ lạc quan giúp bạn vượt qua gian khổ. Ngoài ra, nó còn động viên người khác chịu đựng gian khổ. (In addition, S+V \sim)
	* an optimistic attitude
3	Có lẽ công viên chủ để là một nơi để sinh hoạt với gia đình tốt hơn là thư viện. (Presumably, S+V \sim
	* a theme park
4	Ước gì tôi có thể đi du lịch đến nhiều nước trước khi đi học đại học. ${\rm (I~wish~\sim)}$
	* go to university
5	Giả sử bạn bị giáo viên trách mắng, nhưng bạn nghĩ đó không phải là lỗi của bạn. $(SupposeS+V\sim)$
	* be blamed by
6	Những sinh viên vi phạm quy định của nhà trường đều bị phạt. Nói cách khác, họ phải tuân theo quy định. (In other words, S+V \sim)
	* school rules
7	Xét đến tầm quan trọng được nâng cao của tiếng Anh ở đất nước chúng tôi, nhiều sinh viên chọn ởi du học. (In consideration of X, S+V \sim)
	* study abroad
8	Tôi thà mặc đồng phục đi học còn hơn chi nhiều tiến mua quấn áo mới. (I would rather \sim than \sim
	* school uniform

9	Mặc dù có nhiều lợi ích, nhiên liệu hóa thạch vẫn làm cho ô nhiễm không khí trắm trọng hơn. Hơn nữa, một số nhiên liệu hóa thạch sẽ cạn kiệt trong tương lai gắn. (Moreover, S+V ~)
	*run out
10	Theo quan điểm của tôi, không làm gì vẫn tốt hơn xem tivi. (From my point of view, it is better to-V \sim)
	* do nothing
11	\check{O} nhà thì thích hơn xếp hàng suốt ngày ở một công viễn giải trí. $\ ^{\rm (A\ is\ preferable\ to\ B)}$
	* stand in line
12	Nếu tôi là một ông chủ, tôi sẽ thuế một công nhân có kinh nghiệm với một mức lương cao hơn. (If S+V-cd ~, S+would+V ~)
	* at a higher salary
13	Ước gì tôi có thể du hành ngược lại thời gian để gặp triết gia nổi tiếng Socrates. (1 wish \sim)
	* travel back in time
14	Một số người tiêu tiền quá để dàng. Đặc biệt, họ thích đi mua sắm lu bù. (In particular, S+V \sim)
	* go on a shopping spree
15	Chúng ta có thể bảo vệ động vật đang gặp nguy hiểm bằng cách cứu lấy rừng mưa nhiệt đới. Ngoài ra, làm việc này còn giúp ngắn chặn ô nhiễm không khí thêm nữa. (In addition, S+V \sim)
	* endangered animals
16	Có lễ là không ai muốn sống một mình mà không có người bạn nào trong suốt cuộc đời. (Presumably, S+V \sim)
	* for one's whole life

17	Giả sử chính phủ chi ra nhiều tiền cho việc thám hiểm vũ trụ. $(Let's \ assume \ that \ S+V\sim)$
	* explore outer space
18	Xét đến nhu cầu của một cơ sở giáo dục mới, tôi muốn cộng đồng của chúng ta xây một trường trung học. (In consideration of X , $S+V\sim$)
	* an education facility
19	Giả sử sinh viên sẽ cảm thấy ít bị áp lực từ bạn đồng trang lửa hơn nếu họ mặc đồng phục đi học. (Suppose S+V-
	* peer pressure
20	Nhiều trẻ em xem tivi quá nhiều giờ hàng ngày. Quan trọng hơn, chúng thấy quá nhiều bạo lực trén tivi. (More importantly, S+V \sim)
	*watch TV
21	Như chúng ta đã thấy, sinh viên năm thứ nhất có thể nhận được nhiều kiểu giúp đỡ từ sinh viên lớn hơn bằng cách sống trong ký túc xá. (As we have seen, S+V \sim)
	* live in a dormitory
22	Giả sử là bị cảm lạnh có liên quan đến thời tiết lạnh. (Let's assume that $S+V\sim)$
	* have to do with
23	Đặc biệt, ý kiến của tôi về vấn đề này là sinh viên nên được phép chọn những môn họ muốn học. (In particular, S+V \sim)
	* be allowed to-V
24	Nếu người ta không có đủ tiền mua thực phẩm cho con cái của mình, họ sẽ cảm thấy vô vọng. (If S+V-cd ~, S+would+V ~)
	* feel hopeless

Writing Practice

Read the following questions, and complete the answers as shown in the example.

In the future, students may have the choice of studying at home by using technology such as computers or television or of studying at traditional schools. Which would you prefer?

- → From my point of view, it is better for students to study at home by using technology because they can save a lot of time.
 - Theo quan diểm của tôi, sẽ tốt hơn cho sinh viên ngỗi học tại nhà bằng cách sử dụng công nghệ bởi vi họ có thể tiết kiệm được nhiều thời gian.
- 1 You have received a gift of money. The money is enough to buy either a piece of jewelry you like or tickets to a concert you want to attend. Which would you buy?
- → I would rather

Tôi thà mua một món nữ trang còn hơn là mua vé đi xem hòa nhạc bởi vì đó là cách tốt nhất để đầu tư tiền của tôi.

- 2 Some people prefer to eat at food stands or restaurants. Other people prefer to prepare and eat food at home. Which do you think is better?
 - is preferable to

Ăn ở nhà thì thích hơn ăn nhà hàng bởi vì ở nhà tôi có thể ăn thức ăn có lợi cho sức khỏe.

- 3 Students at universities often have a choice of places to live. They may choose to live in university dormitories, or they may choose to live in apartments in the community. Where would you prefer to live?
- → I would rather

Tôi thà sống ở ký túc xá còn hơn là dành nhiều thời gian tìm kiếm một căn hộ để sống.

- 4 Some people prefer to spend time with one or two close friends. Others choose to spend time with a large number of friends. Which way of spending time do you think is better?
- → From my point of view, it is better

Theo quan điểm của tôi, dành thời gian với một nhóm nhỏ những người bạn thân thì tốt hơn bởi vì tôi có thể chia sẽ ngay cả những bí mất riêng tư của tôi với ho.

- 5 Your school has enough money to purchase either computers for students or books for the library. Which should your school choose to buy—computers or books?
 - is preferable to

Mua máy vi tính thì thích hơn mua sách bởi vì sinh viên có thể đọc sách điện tử trên mang Internet.

Read the following questions, and complete the answers as shown in the example.

When people move to another country, some of them decide to follow the customs of their new country. Others prefer to keep their own customs. Which one do you think is better?

→ If I moved to a foreign country, I would follow its customs to adapt to the new environment more quickly.

Nếu tôi chuyển đến một nước khác, tôi sẽ theo các phong tục của đất nước đó để thích ứng với môi trường mới nhanh chóng hơn.

- 1 Some people say that physical exercise should be a required part of every school day. Other people believe that students should spend the entire school day on academic studies. Which opinion do you agree with?
- → Let's assume that
 Giả sử là sinh viện hiếm khi tập thể dục, vì vậv họ sẽ có một số vấn để về sức khỏe.
- 2 What do you want most in a friend—someone who is intelligent, someone who has a sense of humor, or someone who is reliable? Which one of these characteristics is most important to you?
- → Presumably,
 Có lẽ là mọi người đều cần một người ban mà ho có thể hỗi ý kiến khi ho gặp rắc rối.
- 3 Some people prefer to enjoy their money when they earn it. Others choose to save their money for some time in the future. Which do you think is better?
- → Suppose Giả sử ban không có một xu khi ban cần tiến cho một việc khẩn cấp.
- 4 Some people believe that students should be given one long vacation each year. Others believe that students should have several short vacations throughout the year. Which viewpoint do you agree with?
- Nếu tội có nhiều kỳ nghỉ ngắn thay vì một kỳ nghỉ dài, tội có thể giữ cho mình được sáng khoái trong suốt cả năm.
- 5 Some people think that governments should spend as much money as possible on developing or buying computer technology. Other people disagree and think that this money
- should be spent on more basic needs. Which one of these opinions do you agree with?
 - Nếu chính phủ lờ đi việc đáp ứng nhu cầu cơ bản của xã hội chúng ta, người nghèo sẽ chịu đưng nhiều khổ sở hơn.

→ If

		→ Not all experienced workers work efficiently. In addition, some of them can even be tardy.
		Không phải tất cả các công nhân có kinh nghiệm đều làm việc có hiệu quả. Hơn nữa, một vài người trong số họ thậm chí còn trễ nãi.
	1	Some people trust their first impressions about a person's character because they believe these judgments are generally correct. Other people do not judge a person's character quickly because they believe first impressions are often wrong. Which attitude do you agree with?
	\rightarrow	
		In other words,
		Không ai có thể xét đoán chính xác tính cách của một người sau khi gặp người đó chỉ một lần. Nói cách khác, những ấn tượng đầu tiên không đáng tin cậy.
	2	Some people choose friends who are different from themselves. Others choose friends who are similar to themselves. Which kind of friends do you prefer for yourself?
	→	More importantly,
		Mọi người đều có một tẩm nhìn khác nhau, ngay cả giữa bạn bè với nhau. Quan trọng hơn, tẩm nhìn khác nhau
		thường gây ra xung đột giữa bạn bè với nhau.
	3	Some people prefer to spend most of their time alone. Others like to be with friends most of the time. Which way of spending time do you think is better?
	\rightarrow	In addition,
t .		Bạn bè tốt có thể giúp tôi vượt qua rắc rối. Ngoài ra, đôi khi họ có thể là thẩy của tôi trong cuộc sống.
	4	A company is going to give some money either to support the arts or to protect the environment. Which do you think the company should choose?
	\rightarrow	In particular,
		Rõ ràng là chúng ta cắn một môi trường sạch sẽ để sống. Đặc biệt, chúng ta sẽ không thể sống thậm chí trong

5 Some people believe that success in life comes from taking risks or chances. Others believe

Như chủng ta đã thấy, nằm lấy cơ hội không những là con đường ngắn nhất mà còn là cách tốt nhất để đi đến

that success results from careful planning. Which view do you agree with?

giây lát nếu chúng ta không có không khí để thờ.

→ As we have seen.

thành công.

Read the following questions, and complete the answers as shown in the example.

151

Writing Challenge

R	ead the following questions, and write two or three sentences on what you think about each one
	You have enough money to purchase either a house or a business. Which would you choose to buy? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.
	Buy a house: If I cannot make a profit out of a business, I may lose all the money. Therefore, I would rather purchase a house than invest my money in a business.
が また また (100 mm) 1 / 1 / 1 / 1 / 1 / 1 / 1 / 1 / 1 / 1	Buy a business: I can have both a house and a business if I purchase the business first. In other words, I should purchase a business first so that I can buy a house with the profits from the business.
1	Some items (such as clothes or furniture) can be made by hand or by machine. Which do you prefer—items made by hand or items made by machine? Use specific reasons and examples to explain your choice.
	Prefer hand-made items:
	Prefer machine-made items:
2	Would you prefer to live in a traditional house or in a modern apartment building? Use specific reasons and details to support your choice.
	Live in a traditional house:

Live in an apartment:

3	Some people believe that the best way to learn about life is by listening to the advice of family and friends. Other people believe that the best way to learn about life is through personal experience. Which way of learning do you think is better? Use specific reasons and examples to support your preference.
	Others' advice:
	Personal experience:
4	Some people say that the Internet provides people with a lot of valuable information. Others think access to so much information creates problems. Which view do you agree with? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.
	A lot of valuable information:
	Too much information:
t	
5	Some universities require students to take classes in many subjects. Other universities require students to specialize in one subject. Which policy do you think is better? Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.
	Many subjects:
	One subject:



Introducing iBT Writing

This part will help you practice basic skills for the TOEFL® writing. It consists of brainstorming & outlining, note taking, and paraphrasing & summarizing. These skills will be useful tools when you address both the Integrated and the Independent Task of the Writing section on the TOEFL® IBT.

- ***Unit 17 Brainstorming & Outlining**
- Unit 18 Note Taking
- Unit 19 Paraphrasing & Summarizing

77 Brainstorming & Outlining

Brainstorming

Brainstorming is the process of generating ideas before you begin to write about a topic. You should come up with as many ideas as possible about the topic. If you put down those ideas on paper, it will help you to choose an appropriate, logical organizaton for the information in your essay. As a way of writing down ideas on paper, you can use a cluster diagram, also known as a mind map.

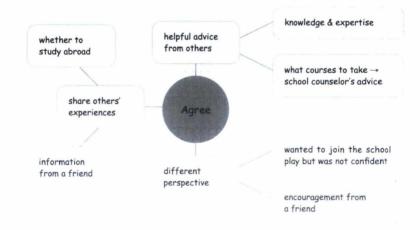
How to Brainstorm

- 1 Read the essay topic, and identify the task. It is essential to undertand what the essay topic requires you to do if you want to brainstorm in the right direction.
- 2 Take a position about the statement in the essay topic. Do you agree or disagree with it?
- 3 Write down as many ideas as you can to support your opinion. Some ideas will be more general, others will be more specific, and others may have little to do with your opinion.

Do you agree or disagree with the following statement?

A person should never make an important decision alone.

Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.



Outlining

Outlining refers to organizing the ideas from the brainstorming process in order to get a sketch of your essay. In the outlining stage, you should distinguish major ideas from minor ones and arrange them according to the typical structure of the TOEFL® essay: introduction, body, and conclusion.

How to Outline

- 1 Look at your brainstorm, and choose the best ideas. You can group similar ideas and cross out the ideas which are unconnected to the topic.
- 2 State your thesis clearly in the introduction. A thesis statement should show what your position is about the essay topic.
- 3 Set aside the main ideas and supporting ideas for the body. These main ideas are supposed to be topic sentences in the body paragraphs. There are usually two or three of them. To develop the main ideas, you also need supporting details and examples.
- 4 Provide a summary in the conclusion. You may restate your thesis and summarize the main points discussed in the body paragraphs.

Sample

Introduction

An important decision should not be made without consulting others.

Body Paragraph 1

Others' advice is helpful.

- knowledge and expertise
- school counselor's advice about what courses to take

Body Paragraph 2

Can share others' experiences

- had to decide whether to study abroad
- information from a friend who has studied overseas

Body Paragraph 3

Can get a different perspective

- wanted to join the school play but was not confident
- encouragement from a friend

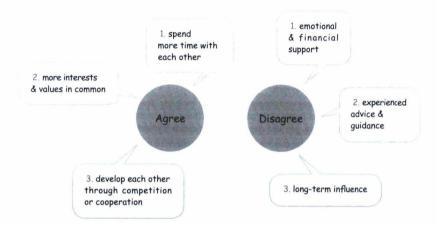
Conclusion

With an important decision, I always seek others' advice so that I can benefit from their knowledge, experience, and perspectives.

Practice with Agree / Disagree Questions

1 Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Classmates have more influence on a child's success at school than parents do. Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

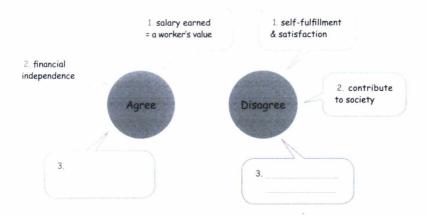
A. Brainstorm



Agree	a service de	Disagree
Classmates affect a child's success at school more than parents do.	Opinion	A child's success at school depends more on parents than on classmates.
1. Classmates spend more time with each other.	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	1. Parents support a child emotionally as well as financially.
2. Classmates usually have more interests and values in common.	Reasons	2. Parents help a child have a good attitude to others.
3. Classmates help develop each other through competition or cooperation.		3. Parents have a long-term influence on a child.

2 Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? The most important aspect of a job is the money a person earns. Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

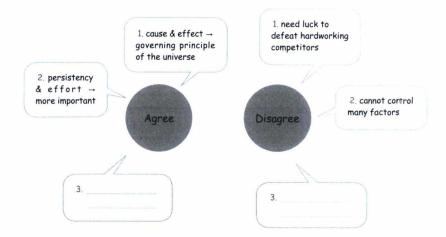
A. Brainstorm



Agree		Disagree
I agree that the most important reason why people have jobs is to earn as much money as possible.	Opinion	There are many important aspects of a job other than the salary.
The salary earned equals a worker's value at a company.		1. You can fulfill and satisfy yourself through your work.
People have jobs to gain financial independence in the end.	Reasons	2. You contribute to society by doing your work.
3.		3.

3 Do you agree or disagree with the following quotation? "When people succeed, it is because of hard work. Luck has nothing to do with success." Use specific reasons and examples to explain your position

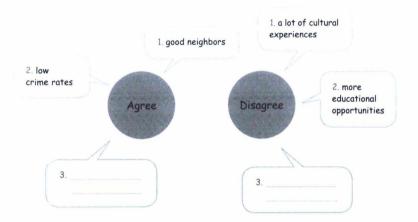
A. Brainstorm



Agree		Disagree
It is evident that	Opinion	In my opinion,
Everything in the universe is governed by the principle of cause and effect.		 If all your competitors work hard, the only thing you need to defeat them is luck.
Successful people are always hard workers who never give up.	Reasons	2. You cannot control all the facters even if you really want to succeed in life.
3.		3.

4 Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? It is better for children to grow up in the countryside than in a big city. Use specific reasons and examples to develop your essay.

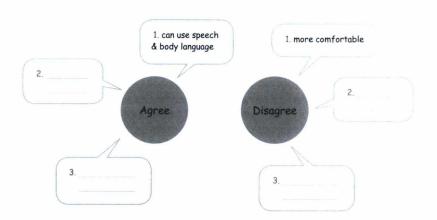
A. Brainstorm



Agree		Disagree
In my view,	Opinion	There is no question that
1. Neighbors in the countryside are friendlier than those in a big city.		Big cities provide a variety of cultural events that children can participate in.
The crime rates in rural areas are much lower than those in urban areas.	Reasons	2. Big cities offer more educational opportunities than small towns.
3.		3.

5 Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Face-to-face communication is better than other types of communication, such as letters, email, or telephone calls. Use specific reasons and details to support your answer.

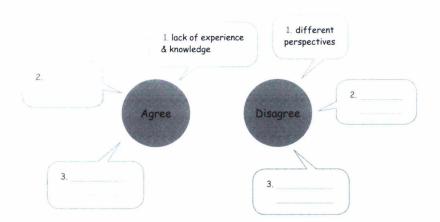
A. Brainstorm



Agree		Disagree
I strongly agree that	Opinion	In my opinion,
You can use body language as well as speech.	or viscor	People tend to express their feelings more comfortably when they do not see the other person's face.
2.	Reasons	2.
3.		3.

6 Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? There is nothing that young people can teach older people. Use specific reasons and details to support your opinion.

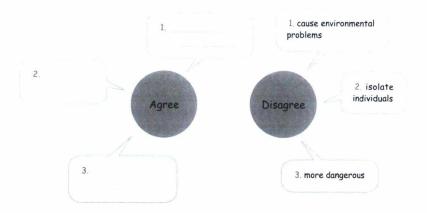
A. Brainstorm



Agree		Disagree
In my experience,	Opinion	I disagree
Compared to older people, young people usually lack experience and knowledge.	******	Young people can offer different new perspectives on some issues older people have.
2.	Reasons	2.
3.		3.

7 Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Technology has made the world a better place to live in. Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

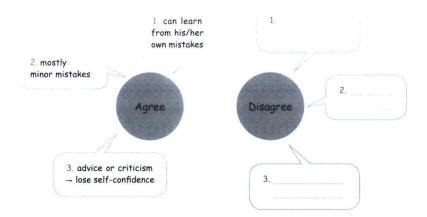
A. Brainstorm



Agree		Disagree
	Opinion	I question whether there has been any improvement in the quality of life as a result of technological developments.
1.	- 114-114-114-114-114-114-114-114-114-11	Technological developments have worsened environmental problems.
2.	Reasons	 Technology such as TV and the Internet isolates a lot of individuals from society.
3.		 The development of military weapons has made the world a more dangerous place to live.

8 Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? Letting a friend make a mistake is better than saying or doing something that would destroy the friendship. Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

A. Brainstorm

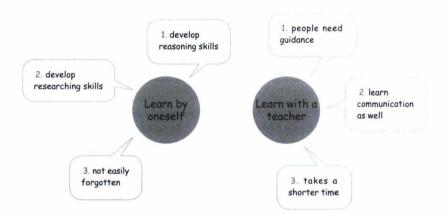


Agree		Disagree
I agree that it is better to let a friend make a mistake than to say or do something about it.	Opinion	
1. Every person grows by learning from his/her own mistakes.		1.
A friend's mistakes are mostly minor ones which do not call for advice or other actions.	Reasons	2.
 Your advice or criticism can make the friend lose his/her self- confidence. 		3.

Practice with Preference Questions

Some people think that they can learn better by themselves than with a teacher. Others think that it is always better to have a teacher. Which do you prefer? Use specific reasons to develop your essay.

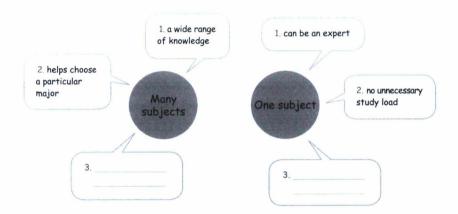
A. Brainstorm



Learn by oneself	17.17	Learn with a teacher
I firmly believe that it is better to learn by oneself than to learn with a teacher.	Opinion	In spite of the benefits of learning by oneself, I believe that the best way to learn something is to be taught by a teacher.
You may be able to learn how to reason while trying to understand the concepts.	10/8-10/19/19/19	People need someone who can guide them when they have no idea where to start.
Since you will find the sources of information by yourself, you will learn how to do research.	Reasons	You can also practice communicating with others while talking to your teacher.
You will not easily forget things that you have struggled to master.		 It takes a shorter time to learn with a teacher than to learn by oneself.

2 Some universities require students to take classes in many subjects. Other universities require students to specialize in one subject. Which is better? Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

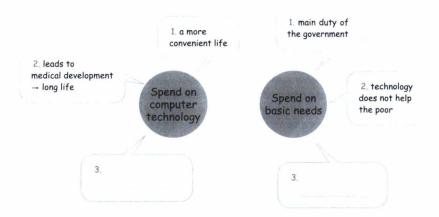
A. Brainstorm



Many subjects		One subject
Given the choice between learning many subjects and one subject, I would like to learn as many subjects as I can.	Opinion	I would rather specialize in one subject than learn many subjects.
I. I can gain a wide range of knowledge in many areas.		1. I can be an expert in that particular field.
I need to know about as many subjects as possible in order to decide which field to pursue for my career.	Reasons	2. I can reduce any unnecessary study loads if I focus on only one subject.
3.		3.

3 Some people think that governments should spend as much money as possible on developing or buying computer technology. Other people think that this money should be spent on more basic needs. Which opinion do you agree with? Use specific reasons and details to support your answer.

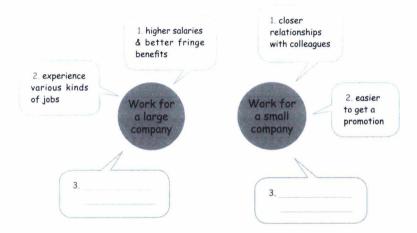
A. Brainstorm



Spend on computer technology		Spend on basic needs
I think that	Opinion	In my opinion,
If computer technology develops, everybody will be able to enjoy more convenient lives.	10000	Meeting the basic needs of society is the main duty of governments.
 The development of computer technology can lead to medical developments, thereby lengthening people's lifespans. 	Reasons	Computer technology is almost useless for the poor.
3,		3.

4 Some people prefer to work for a large company. Others prefer to work for a small company. Which option do you think is better? Use specific reasons and details to support your choice.

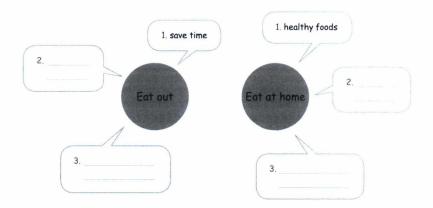
A. Brainstorm



Work for a large company		Work for a small company	
I think that	Opinion	In my opinion,	
Big companies usually offer higher salaries and better fringe benefits.		Employees at a small company have closer relationships with each other.	
 You can have more chances to get experience doing various kinds of jobs. 	Reasons	As the number of employees is smaller, it is easier to get promotions.	
3.		3.	

5 Some people prefer to eat at food stands or restaurants. Other people prefer to prepare and eat food at home. Which do you prefer? Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

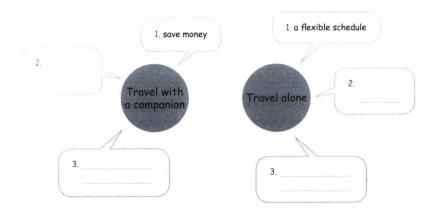
A. Brainstorm



Eat out		Eat at home
Given the choice between	Opinion	Compared to
As I don't have to cook if I eat out, I can save time.	113.753533.10	Hardly any restaurants serve foods as healthy as those you prepare at home.
2.	Reasons	2.
3.		3.

6 Some people like to travel with a companion. Other people prefer to travel alone. Which do you think is better? Use specific reasons and examples to support your choice.

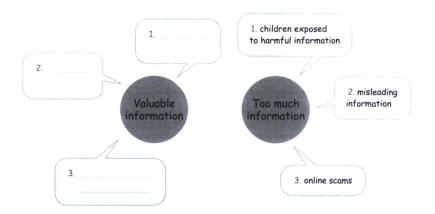
A. Brainstorm



Travel with a companion		Travel alone
From my perspective,	Opinion	I would rather
You can save money by sharing accommodations and transportation fees.		If I travel alone, I will be able to manage my schedule more flexibly.
2.	Reasons	2.
3.		3.

7 Some people say that the Internet provides people with a lot of valuable information. Others think access to so much information creates problems. Which view do you agree with? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

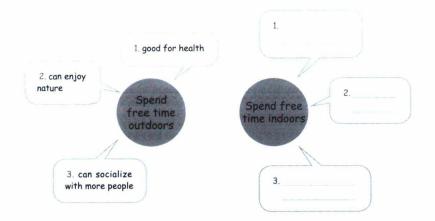
A. Brainstorm



Valuable information		Too much information
	Opinion	I agree that excessive amounts of the information on the Internet cause problems.
1.		Children are easily exposed to harmful information on the Internet.
2.	Reasons	2. Much of the information on the Internet is misleading or just wrong.
3.		Innocent people can be victims of online scams.

8 Some people prefer to spend their free time outdoors. Other people prefer to spend their leisure time indoors. Which option do you think is better for your leisure activities? Use specific reasons and examples to support your choice.

A. Brainstorm



Spend free time outdoors		Spend free time indoors
I would rather participate in outdoor activities than indoor ones.	Opinion	
Doing outdoor activities such as soccer and hiking is good for one's health.		1.
Outdoor activities can give you good opportunities to enjoy nature.	Reasons	2.
Outdoor activities enable you to socialize with more people.		3.

Note Taking

Note taking is an essential skill in most academic classes because students need to sort, organize, and remember what is presented in their lectures and textbooks. Note-taking skills help students effectively summarize, paraphrase, and cite information from the source material.

How to Take Notes Effectively

- 1 Focus on the topic and main points. Distinguish the more important points from the less important ones being made. Jot down the main issues, not the details.
- 2 Take notes by analyzing the reading text and lecture. In order to see the construction of the text and lecture, try to change lines, indent, or give numbers if necessary.
- 3 Try not to write down every word of a lecture or copy long excerpts from the text. One of the important features of note taking is that you are making a digest of the originals and translating the information into your own words. Use symbols and abbreviations to digest the originals.
- 4 Use the style of note taking that works best for you.

Sample

Franchise

A franchise is a license purchased by an individual store owner to use the brand name, training, and supplies of a chain store. Some examples are McDonald's and Jiffy Lube.

The buyer of a franchise benefits from the instant name recognition of the national chain store, thereby allowing him or her to save on advertising costs. In return, the seller requires that the buyer meet the seller's quality-control standards. Franchise owners join together to buy supplies in bulk directly from the national chain, resulting in lower costs, than if they had to buy individually.



Franchise

- 1. def. license 2 use brand name (e.g. McDonald's & Jiffy Lube)
- 2. advantages instant name recog. → advertising costs
 - good quality control
 - bulk purchasing → costs

How to Make Abbreviations

1 Omit the letters in the middle of the word, and leave the beginning and ending parts of the word to recognize the word itself.

 $important \rightarrow imp't \qquad government \rightarrow gov't \qquad clerk \rightarrow clk \qquad \qquad international \rightarrow int'l$

2 Omit the vowels in the word.

 $people \rightarrow ppl \hspace{1cm} foot \, / \, feet \rightarrow ft \hspace{1cm} year \rightarrow yr \hspace{1cm} hour \rightarrow hr$

3 Omit the ending part of the word.

4 Use the number or letter that has the same pronunciation as the word.

 $to \rightarrow 2$ $you \rightarrow U$ $for \rightarrow 4$ $see \rightarrow C$

5 Latin abbreviations

and so on \rightarrow etc. for example \rightarrow e.g. compare \rightarrow cf. in other words \rightarrow i.e.

Useful Symbols and Abbreviations

Symbol	Meaning	Abbreviation	Meaning
	lead to, cause, produce, drive	w/	with, involving
←	come from, is the result of	w/o	without
1	increase, go up, rise	e.g.	for example
Ţ	decrease, lower	esp.	especially
	opposite to	vs.	versus, in contrast to
&	and	cf.	compare, confer
1	or, per	i.e.	that is, in other words
#	number	etc.	et cetera, and so on
?	question	b/c	because
15.	therefore, so	b/4	before
	because, since	b/t	between
~	approximately, about	re:	regarding, about
x	~ times	yr / yrs	year / years
>	greater than	max.	maximum
<	less than	min.	minimum
@	at	ASAP	as soon as possible

Check-Up

	Birds are an example of someth	ing that drives th	ne cost of wind	farms up.	
	e.g. birds wind far	m cost †		navers Fred - Fr	e icom
1	In contrast to gas guzzling SUV	s, smart cars les	ssen gas cons	umption considerably	<i>j</i> .
	SUVs (gas) sn	nart cars (gas)	ending part of the w	edi licul
2	Regarding megastores, they a shopping.	ire especially go	ood for busy p	eople because they	offer o
	megastores -	good for busy	(b/c one-	stop shopping)	ids on
3	Self-checkout systems at sup because they can be used at a		greater conve	enience to shoppers	than c
3		ny time.	greater conve	enience to shoppers	
	because they can be used at a	ny time. systems	cashiers (can be used anytin	
4	convenience-self-checkout Early retirement without enough	ny time. systems	cashiers (can be used anytin	

6	Web-based surveys offer increased freedom since they can be conducted without human interaction.
	web-based surveys $ ightarrow$ freedom (conducted human interaction)
7	The cost of a well-planned computer voting system is much less than that of a paper voting system.
	cost - computer paper
8	Self-deception is an especially big problem in cases involving substance abuse.
	self-deception - substance abuse
9	The decline of the menhaden has reduced the number of bird species that use it as a food source.
9	The decline of the menhaden has reduced the number of bird species that use it as a food
	The decline of the menhaden has reduced the number of bird species that use it as a food source.
	The decline of the menhaden has reduced the number of bird species that use it as a food source. menhaden → birds that feed on it
	The decline of the menhaden has reduced the number of bird species that use it as a food source. menhaden

Complete the following short passages according to the notes.

```
self-deception → workplace productivity ↓
- e.g. addiction to TV / computer games → work levels ↓
```

Self-deception causes our ⁽¹⁾workplace productivity to suffer ⁽²⁾diminishing levels of return. Prolonged bouts of ⁽³⁾self-deception, such as a strong addiction to television or computer games, can cause work levels to diminish to dangerously ⁽⁴⁾low levels.

Trace fossils - trace - e.g. traces of foot	es left behind creature (cf. body fos tprints / dung	sils)	
(1)	are traces left behind by a creature	, rather than (2)	c
the creature itself. Son	ne such trace fossils are of (3)	or ⁽⁴⁾	
that was preserved in t	he elements over time.		
2			hana a
	oying of human genetic tissue mat. → egg cell → genetic mat. (↔ nucleus	s) new cell	
	→ egg cell → genetic mat. (↔ nucleus	netic tissue material. It is	performed
- procedure: donor	→ egg cell → genetic mat. (↔ nucleus	netic tissue material. It is p	performe
- procedure: donor Human cloning is the (1) by taking an (2)	→ egg cell → genetic mat. (→ nucleus of human ge	netic tissue material. It is principle $^{(3)}$	performe
Human cloning is the (to by taking an (2) and adding the genetic	of human ge	netic tissue material. It is p ving the ⁽³⁾ ing a ⁽⁴⁾	performe

(1) can lead to many problems with (2) and (3) for those who suffer from it. TV addiction often increases to problematic levels when it occurs in conjunction with a decreased number of (4) with others.

· 中央公司 第二年 新 · 新	2 work in rural areas	aalaan ka ka ka bana ka
: equipment	, patient cooperation &	& sterility of operating conditions \
Sometimes doctor	ors hate to work in (1)	to help sick and injured pe
who do not hav	e access to a hospital.	The reasons for this unwillingness are that
(2)	in rural clin	nics is often poor, the patients do not alw
(3)	, and the level of sterility	y in the operating rooms is (4)
To the Graffie dhe fibeli		
econ theory	of utility - measures consu	mer satisfaction
	asting hamburger - utility	
9939 9939		
- 1 - 0)		1 (2)
The (1)	measures the l	
example, if a ma		at restaurant #1 better than at restauran
the utility of the fi	rst hamburger is (4)	for that consumer.
shace explana	tion - improvements in scie	ence & general knowledge
	nicrowave oven & firefightin	
	f Earth † re: meteorology	
- knowledge o		
- knowledge o		
The (1)		s resulted in a number of improvement
	. Just a few of the	s resulted in a number of improvement many inventions that have resulted from the sp dditionally, the space program has increased m

Practice with Note Taking

A Read the following passages, and complete the notes.

1 Wind farms produce energy by harnessing wind power. Wind farms require a large amount of land in a place far from cities, where land is inexpensive, and people do not want to live next door to them. Also, the windmill blades, which generate electricity, can break down easily when birds and debris get caught, raising the cost of the energy created.

```
Disadvantages of (1)

1. need (2)

2. birds & debris → windmill breakdown → (3)
```

2 The smart car is a vehicle that is easy to park since it is small enough to be parked nose-in in places where a conventionally sized car would have to be parallel parked. Because of its light weight, it gets very high gas mileage. It is also manufactured in a very environmentally friendly manner in terms of assembly, painting, and recycling features.

3 Megastores tend to be located in the suburbs, close to residential areas and accessible by major highways. Their size and extensive inventory result in several advantages. They can buy in large quantities, lowering the cost of each unit, so the savings are passed on to the consumer. Those low prices make the stores popular with large families, and the variety of goods allows the convenience of one-stop shopping.

Advantages of Megastores	
1. easily (1)	- close to residential areas & major highways
2. size → prices b/c buy (2)	
3. inventory of various goods -	possible

4 Buzz marketing creates a "buzz" through individual word-of-mouth references and follow-up. It can cause confusion and misunderstanding for messages, however. These are not one-way announcements, though, like in traditional marketing and advertisements. Also, reaching a large audience through buzz marketing can be expensive, and the results are not always worth the effort.

Disadvantages of Buzz Marketing		6.0						
1, causes (1)								
2. (2)								
3. payback - not always (3)								

Web-based surveys are convenient since they can be taken anytime. People can take the surveys at their own pace and without human interaction. Furthermore, they can get instant results since the answers are gathered and analyzed, and trends can be determined as soon as the survey is completed.

Advantages of Web-base	Surveys	
1. can be taken (1)	- respondent's own pace	
2: conduct surveys-w/o (2)	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
3. can get (3)	results	

6 Computerized voting systems cost a lot less than paper voting systems if they are well planned. Once voting ends, the results can be tallied instantly, and the outcome is known immediately. In addition, these systems eliminate human error in vote counting, and they can perform instant recounts when the results of the election are too close to determine a winner.

Advantages of	omputerized Voting Systems
1. (1)	- computerized voting < paper voting
2. results & out	me - ⁽²⁾
3. (3)	↓ & instant recount

- B Listen to the lectures, and complete the following notes.
 - 1 Listen to part of a lecture. Oll

AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA	AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
Advantages of Wind Farms	white our amount of the configuration of the
1. no pollution - no sulfur / (1)	
2. cost - wind farms ((2)	
3. wind blows :: (3)	

2 Listen to part of a lecture. 002

Car you want in the manner the countries once 4 days for the
for families w/ kids / heavy loads
they're (2)
if hit by a larger car

3 Listen to part of a lecture. 003

Disadvantages of Megasto	res
1. hard 2 find things - (1)	
2. (2)	↓ - few knowledgeable service people
3. amounts too large, esp. (3) → waste

4	Listen	to	nart	of a	lecture.	0 04

Advantages of Bu	zz Marketing				
1. focus on consum	ers (I)				
2, (2)	spread by consumers				
△ (3)	& know why need product				
and the second second second					

5 Listen to part of a lecture. 005

<u> </u>	*****		
Disadvantages of Wel	b-based Surveys		
1. no (1)	→ (2)	answers	
2. one person → repea	ted surveys → (3)	results	

6 Listen to part of a lecture. 006

had Bradital Bradital Bradital Bradital Bradital	and all the short to the contribute of being all all advantages and the fine flow for the contribute of the first
Advantages of Paper	Voting
1. no expensive setup	→ (n) 1
2.(2)	- no machine breakdown
3. can be used as (3)	

Take notes on the following reading passages and the corresponding lectures.

Read the following passage.

There are several advantages of franchises. A well-known franchise, such as McDonald's, which is famed for its golden arches, has instant brand recognition among customers. So the company does not have to advertise its brand. Furthermore, its products are produced in one place and delivered to each franchise to ensure the highest quality. In addition, the bookkeeping involved in running the business is done using a single method, which makes reporting taxes both easy and uniform.

Advantages of Franchises

- 1, (1) w/o ads
- 2. production in 1 place → (2)
- 3 (3) - easy & uniform tax reporting

Now listen to part of a lecture on the topic you just read about.





Disadvantages of Franchises

- 1. many places look (1)
- 2. production in 1 place (2)
- simple bookkeeping → useless in places w/ (3)

Human cloning, if it is performed with the highest moral and ethical constraints, offers many benefits to humans. Through cloning, a person killed in an accident could be cloned and returned to his or her family. Another positive aspect of cloning is the ability it would give us to produce healthy babies, with the physical attributes chosen by the parents, and without the dangers that natural birth poses to the mother or the child. Finally, people will be able to create clones of themselves in order to harvest their organs or other tissues if they have a medical issue. This way, a person in need of a heart transplant could simply use his clone's heart without the fear of his body rejecting it.

Advantages of Human Cloning 1. a person killed in an accident - (1) 2. healthy babies - selected (2) 3. clones of oneself - use organs / tissues, e.g. (3)

Now listen to part of a lecture on the topic you just read about. 008



Disadvantages of Human Clor	ning
1. playing God - beyond (1)	constraints
2. accidental (2)	→ human race ↓
3. possible (3)	of a cloned baby — faulty lab procedures

医泰州斯茨根斯及尼州州州北京区北京区区区区区区区区区区区区区区区区区区区

Supermarket self-checkout systems rely on the accuracy of their computerized scanning hardware. Customers can scan, weigh, bag, and pay for goods by themselves, thus avoiding long checkout lines. The stores themselves can hire fewer cashiers, saving on labor costs and passing those savings on to the customer. Also, the stores can offer customer-specific services, such as selecting advertisements useful to a particular customer by building a database of each customer's buying habits and characteristics.

Advantages of S	self-checkout Systems
[(1)	checkout → shorter lines
2. fewer cashiers	5 → (2)
3. (3)	→ e.g. ads for a particular customer

Now listen to part of a lecture on the topic you just read about.



Disadvantages of Self-checkout Systems

1. not (1) 4 customers

2. hard 2 remove a wrong item → (2) - no help

3. encourage buying (3)

Speed cameras are installed as stand-alone speed-rule enforcement tools. They are connected to the central system and monitored remotely by people or computer programs. Speed cameras are much cheaper to operate and maintain than traffic police. Also, they are machine-based and not controlled by people. So their judgment is fair, and the traffic rules are enforced more accurately and consistently. Finally, speed cameras can replace traffic policemen, thus reducing the overall police force. This would help the police take care of other important and urgent duties.

1. (1)	than traffic police	
2. machine-based -	, (2)	
-	· accurate & consistent enforcement of rules	
3. replace (3)	→ take care of other duties	

Now listen to part of a lecture on the topic you just read about. @1000



Web-based storybooks are electronic books in a web format. They are interactive and dynamic. For example, they often take the reader to different pages based on the reader's wishes or answers. Since they are only published on the web, updating their contents is done in real time, and deleting old books is easy. Besides, the cost of putting them online is much cheaper than printing them on paper, and they can be distributed more broadly.

Advantages of Web-based Storybooks

- 1. $^{(1)}$ & dynamic ightarrow diff. pages based on the reader's wishes / answers
- 2. (2) & ez 2 delete old books
- 3. publishing cost | & broader (3)

Now listen to part of a lecture on the topic you just read about.



Disadvantages of Web-based Storybooks

- 1. no (1) book poorly assembled / links don't work / disappears
 - 2. must be on Internet → cannot (2) in book
 - 3. cannot use w/o (3) \rightarrow no reading on beach / in bed at night

Group study is very effective when you do not completely understand a subject or when there are too many subjects to study. It is easier for a group to tackle a difficult set of topics than for a person to do everything alone. Group discussion serves to clarify issues and generate a broader range of opinions and proposed solutions. Topics can also be divided into subparts and assigned to individual group members or subgroups. Working with other group members can lead to long-term personal or professional relationships.

l. difficult topics - (1)	→ better opinions / results
2. too many (2)	- subparts assigned 2 members / subgroups
3. long-term (3)	

Now listen to part of a lecture on the topic you just read about.



Disadvantages of Group Study 1. in-depth studying 4 a single subjt → (1) 2. not good when (2) 3. distraction from study → (3)

119

Paraphrasing & Summarizing

Paraphrasing and summarizing are essential skills in academic writing, including both the Integrated and Independent tasks on the TOEFL® iBT. Having these skills will help you take greater control of your writing.

Paraphrasing

Paraphrasing is expressing someone else's ideas in your own words. In order to paraphrase a passage, first you need to change its structure, and then you need to replace the words with synonyms. Also, you should not omit the major details of the original text.

How to Paraphrase

- 1 Understand the basic point of the original text.
- 2 Change the structure. For example, you can change the voice, break up long sentences, or combine short ones.
- 3 Change the words, making use of synonyms or phrases that express the same meaning. You do not have to change technical terms and conventional designations.
- e.g. The causes of autism have been a matter of dispute among scientists for a long time.
- Basic point >> The causes of autism are controversial among scientists.
- → Scientists have disputed the causes of autism for a long time. (Structure change)
- → Researchers have not yet agreed on what causes autism. (Word change)

Sample

One way to fight global warming is to raise the gasoline tax. Raising this tax would make it more expensive for people to drive. The desired effect would be for people to drive less and try to conserve more gas. This would result in less gasoline being burned and, in turn, less damage being done to the ozone layer.



Raising the gasoline tax can help stop global warming. This measure would restrain driving, making it more expensive, and thus would reduce the consumption of gasoline. This decrease in gasoline burning would help protect the ozone layer.

Summarizing

Summarizing is to extract only the most essential ideas of someone else's work. When you summarize a passage, first you need to understand the meaning of the passage, and then you need to capture in your own words the most important points from the original text. You should not include the details in a summary. A summary should be shorter than a paraphrase.

How to Summarize

- 1 Read the text carefully. Determine its structure, and identify the author's purpose. You need to read it more than once to understand it completely and accurately.
- 2 Locate the topic sentence and other main points. You can underline or highlight key words.
- 3 Paraphrase the main points in your own words. Make sure that you are faithful to the meaning of the original text. You should never include your opinion.
- 4 Use the present tense.
- 5 At the beginning of the summary, cite the author and name of the work, if any.
- 6 Include verbs indicating the source of a statement. (e.g. The author says, states, contends, argues, etc.)
- e.g. Because of their diversity, seven separate groupings or divisions of algae have been established by botanists.
- Key words >> seven separate groupings / algae / botanists
- → Botanists have classified algae into seven types. (Summary 1)
- → Botanically, there are seven types of algae. (Summary 2)

Sample

One way to fight global warming is to raise the gasoline tax. Raising this tax would make it more expensive for people to drive. The desired effect would be for people to drive less and try to conserve more gas. This would result in less gasoline being burned and, in turn, less damage being done to the ozone layer.



Increasing the gasoline tax might slow global warming by forcing people to use less gas for driving, resulting in less harm to the ozone layer.

Practice with Paraphrasing

A Choose the best paraphrase of each sentence.

1 Megastores do not require the customer to purchase large quantities of items.

- (A) Customers do not have to buy goods in bulk at megastores.
- (B) Megastores do not carry large quantities of products for customers.
- (C) Customers must buy a large number of items at megastores.

2 The use of speed cameras is backed only by misleading statistics.

- (A) Statistics show that speed cameras are effective.
- (B) Speed cameras are only useful in certain driving situations.
- (C) Only unreliable statistics support using speed cameras.

3 Advertisements increase consumer spending.

- (A) Consumer spending on advertisements is on the increase.
- (B) Consumers spend more due to advertisements.
- (C) Advertisements have an effect on consumer spending.

4 Studies show that lie detectors are accurate in almost 91% of all cases.

- (A) 91% of lie detectors have been examined accurately.
- (B) Research suggests lie detectors are 91% accurate at detecting lies.
- (C) The accuracy of lie detectors is about 91% according to research.

5 TV has the ability to shut out the rest of our crazy world completely.

- (A) With the help of TV, we can escape from this insane world.
- (B) When watching TV, we always isolate ourselves from the abnormal world.
- (C) TV can totally prevent the rest of our world from going crazy.

6 The release of fossil fuels by humans is the largest source of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.

- (A) Humans release the most carbon dioxide into the air by burning fossil fuels
- (B) Carbon dioxide in the atmosphere is caused by the burning of fossil fuels.
- (C) Humans are the most responsible for the air pollution caused by carbon dicxide.

7 E-books have the ability to store a large amount of data.

- (A) Not much data can be held in E-books.
- (B) Large storage capacity is one feature of E-books.
- (C) E-books can be sold in large quantities at stores.

8 Fluorine, which is used in the production of uranium, is a very toxic gaseous chemical.

- (A) Uranium is made from poisonous fluorine gas.
- (B) Fluorine is a very poisonous gas used to produce uranium.
- (C) Since it is used to produce uranium, gaseous fluorine is very harmful.

9 Tough grading makes it hard for students to get into colleges and universities.

- (A) Students cannot apply to colleges and universities because of a strict grading policy.
- (B) Colleges and universities never accept students with low grades.
- (C) Students have difficulty entering colleges and universities due to strict grading.

10 Human cloning offers the hope of repairing diseased organs.

- (A) Fixing failed body parts may be possible with human cloning.
- (B) Organic diseases can spread through human cloning.
- (C) The cloning of deceased humans may bring them back to life.

11 The treasure described in the Copper Scroll consists of vast quantities of gold and silver.

- (A) Vast quantities of gold and silver are contained in the Copper Scroll.
- (B) The Copper Scroll describes a large treasure of gold and silver.
- (C) The Copper Scroll is made of gold and silver treasure.

12 Political activism is often expressed through community-based theater.

- (A) Political expression is discouraged in local theater groups.
- (B) Political activists are actors from community-based theaters.
- (C) Community-based theater can provide an outlet for political activists.

B	Re	ad each sentence, and rewrite it in your own words.
	1	The school board decided that the new curriculum should be centered on math and science. Paraphrase
	2	Some people may value science less than literature in terms of human development. Paraphrase
	3	Jazz influenced American popular music of the 1920s in many ways. Paraphrase
	4	In view of the weather, the experiment will be postponed. Paraphrase
	5	The winter moth is regarded as one of the major harmful plant pests in Europe. Paraphrase
	6	Group studying enhances students' performances both in class discussions and on tests. Paraphrase
	7	Victorian literature often made fun of the English aristocracy and its shortcomings. Paraphrase
	8	Geopolitics has become increasingly complicated due to the rise of the Internet. Paraphrase
	9	A melanoma is a growth on the skin that contains cancer cells. Paraphrase
	10	The scientist Copernicus was one of the most influential men in history.

11	Airplanes have to receive permission from the control tower before they can take off. Paraphrase
12	The ocean is full of countless mysterious creatures that humans do not yet know much about. Paraphrase
13	The battle for equal rights for women in America was both long and difficult. Paraphrase
14	Acid rain contains toxins that come from factories and are absorbed into the atmosphere. Paraphrase
15	Dinosaurs disappeared from the face of the Earth many millions of years ago. Paraphrase
16	Wounds can be fatal to hemophiliacs because their bleeding does not stop by itself. Paraphrase
17	The Pilgrims left England for the New World because they were seeking an escape from religious persecution. Paraphrase
18	Jesse James was surely the most feared outlaw in the Wild West. Paraphrase
19	Many schools are starting to emphasize the study of math and science more than they did in the past. Paraphrase
20	Most students become bored with subjects that have no practical application in the real world. Paraphrase

Practice with Summarizing



Read each sentence, and summarize it as shown in the example.

Some people go to college to learn a trade, some go to enter a profession, and others, having no immediate career goals, go for the love of learning.

Key words go to college / learn a trade / enter a profession / the love of learning Summary People attend college for different reasons.

	1	The microwave oven allows one to cook food without using the power needed for a gas o electric oven, and it enables one to prepare food quickly and without using as many pots, pans and utensils.
		Key words Summary
;	2	Studies show that watching violence on TV and playing violent video games can lead to increased violent behavior.
		Key words
		Summary
	3	Universities justify spending a lot of money on sports by saying that good sports programs attractive students and faculty.
		Key words
		Summary
ī	4	A good system of public transportation in a large city reduces traffic, saves money on road construction, and lessens harm to the ozone layer.
		Key words
		Summary
	5	Bicyclists have long complained about the lack of bike paths and sidewalk access in American cities.
		Key words

Summary

6	Eighty percent of all college students in the U.S. have at least one part-time job, and some work full-time, which takes their focus away from school and gives them little time for academics.
	Key words
	Summary
7	Cell phone usage and noise have caused a decline in the quality of our civic life and led to a more self-centered outlook on the world.
	Key words
	Summary
8	The rise in Earth's temperature over the last century has triggered the melting of glaciers, increased hurricane activity, and the erosion of the beaches.
	Key words
	Summary
	hospital care, assisted living contars, and nursing homes
10	hospital care, assisted-living centers, and nursing homes. Key words Summary While computers have made many tasks easier and quicker, they have also made social
10	Key words Summary While computers have made many tasks easier and quicker, they have also made social interaction less personal by encouraging communication by e-mail or instant messaging.
10	Key words Summary While computers have made many tasks easier and quicker, they have also made social interaction less personal by encouraging communication by e-mail or instant messaging. Key words
10	Key words Summary While computers have made many tasks easier and quicker, they have also made social interaction less personal by encouraging communication by e-mail or instant messaging.
10	Key words Summary While computers have made many tasks easier and quicker, they have also made social interaction less personal by encouraging communication by e-mail or instant messaging. Key words
	Key words Summary While computers have made many tasks easier and quicker, they have also made social interaction less personal by encouraging communication by e-mail or instant messaging. Key words Summary Rising tuition costs and the cost of living are turning many potential students away from college
	Key words Summary While computers have made many tasks easier and quicker, they have also made social interaction less personal by encouraging communication by e-mail or instant messaging. Key words Summary Rising tuition costs and the cost of living are turning many potential students away from college campuses.
11	Key words Summary While computers have made many tasks easier and quicker, they have also made social interaction less personal by encouraging communication by e-mail or instant messaging. Key words Summary Rising tuition costs and the cost of living are turning many potential students away from college campuses. Key words
11	Key words Summary While computers have made many tasks easier and quicker, they have also made social interaction less personal by encouraging communication by e-mail or instant messaging. Key words Summary Rising tuition costs and the cost of living are turning many potential students away from college campuses. Key words Summary The space program has increased man's knowledge of Earth with regards to meteorology,

B	Read each passage, and summarize it in one sentence.		
	1	A national park is public land protected by law from overdevelopment and pollution. The world's first national park, Yellowstone National Park in the state of Wyoming, was established in 1872. The U.S. Congress continued to pass laws creating many national parks, and, in 1916, an agency, the National Park Service, was formed to govern the parks. Today there are 360 national parks, costing U.S. taxpayers about \$2.2 billion each year.	
	2	People are living a lot longer now than in the past. Hospitals have very advanced equipment that helps doctors diagnose and remedy health problems. Doctors are getting state-of-the-art training throughout the world. Also, doctors are able to prescribe many new medications to help people treat and avoid health concerns. Summary	
	3	Embryonic stem cells are cells that appear in human embryos a few days after fertilization. Because they can grow into any kind of tissue in the body, they may make medical breakthroughs, such as regenerating spinal cords, possible. Their use has triggered ethical objections, however, as some believe the cells are forms of human life and thus should not be destroyed for use in medical experiments.	
		Summary	
	4	The cost of housing in big cities is very expensive. In addition, almost everything costs more than it would in smaller towns. Food, gasoline, and basic living supplies are substantially more expensive in the cities. Many people are choosing to live outside of the cities and drive to work. They can often buy homes for half of the price that they could in the city.	

Summary

5	Modern movies are amazing. They show marvelous special effects created by computers.
	Computers allow special effects artists lots of freedom. They are able to make monsters, edit
	backgrounds, and modify scenes. In addition, many modern blockbusters cost over 100 million
	dollars when directors create them. This huge amount of money allows them to get famous
	actors and travel to lots of locations.

Summary

6	The U.S. expanded differently than the European powers. England, France, and Spain fought
	wars with each other in attempts to acquire new territory. They also colonized other lands
	throughout the world. They used military forces to obtain land. The U.S., on the other hand
	gained most of its land peacefully. The country purchased Florida, the Louisiana Purchase, and
	Alaska. Texas voluntarily joined the country, and the U.S. acquired the southwest after Mexico
	attacked America

Summary

7 Computers are becoming more and more powerful. During the 1990s, the memory and processing speeds of computers were doubling every year or two. This growth has slowed a bit, but they are still growing very quickly. The size of the hardware needed to store information is also shrinking. 40 years ago, NASA needed a computer the size of a room to do calculus equations. Now that power can be held in someone's hand with a calculator.

Summary

Divorces are becoming more frequent in industrialized countries. As countries become wealthier, the status of women often increases. Women are usually added to the workforce. They gain solid jobs and become more economically independent. An independent woman is more likely to seek a divorce since she can sustain herself without a husband. Also, the rights of women usually increase as a country industrializes. In many poor, conservative societies, women do not even have the right to divorce; only men can.

Summary

	deaths, and questionable behavior by women. Pop singers are also following this trend. Popular music videos are highlighted by scantily clad women dancing provocatively.
	Summary
10	Many cities are expanding their mass transit systems. As people learn more about the dangers of the greenhouse effect, more cities want to reduce pollution. This means making more bus routes, adding train tracks, and, most importantly, expanding subways. Subways are becoming larger in terms of new lines being added, and, when possible, they add more trains per line. This effort helps to get more cars off of the streets and puts less pollution in the air.
	Summary
11	Just 20 years ago, almost no one had a video game console or a personal computer at home. Now, most households have a few of each. Many children are spending much of their time playing video games, sending email, or chatting online. They are doing these activities instead of playing outside. This is causing problems like children being overweight and out of shape.
	Summary
12	Biologists have found that constant commercial fishing can be very harmful to the ecosystems from which they take fish. Some of the problems surrounding the overfishing of commercial waters have to do with the irreversible alteration of the ecosystem by removing important fish species. By removing these important species, other dependent life forms, such as plankton and algae, might become overabundant and block out sunlight, which will lead to the death of fragile coral and sponge species.
	Summary

Entertainment is changing society's perception of what is acceptable behavior. Many movies are becoming more violent and sexual in nature. Most popular movies contain many explosions,

13	The zebra mussel was originally found in freshwater lakes in Russia, but it now has spread to the lakes of North America. This creature is a nuisance to humans and is deadly to other aquatic life. First, the zebra mussel is so aggressive that it threatens native populations of freshwater mussels by taking all of the food and blocking the freshwater mussels' air valves. Second, the zebra mussel releases phosphorus into the water, causing aquatic plants to grow too rapidly, and it blocks out sunlight, which endangers many local species. Third, it can clog pipes that feed water into city water supplies.			
	Summary			
14	Over the last century, the type of people typically attending college has changed in America. In the past, college educations were too expensive for regular people. Only society's elite classes could afford to obtain a college education. New financial aid sources plus a rise in the income levels of the middle class have made college more affordable. People from many classes can now afford to get a college education.			
	Summary			
15	The Internet is changing the English language. When people send email or instant messages, they are using new words and expressions. When they chat online, there is a desire for speed that was not needed when they wrote handwritten letters. This means many new words are created, often by abbreviating other words or phrases. One example of this is "LOL," which means "laughs out loud" or "lots of laughs."			
	Summary			

Writing Section Directions © 13

This section measures your ability to use writing to communicate in an academic environment. There will be two writing tasks.

For the first writing task, you will read a passage and listen to a lecture and then answer a question based on what you have read and heard. For the second writing task, you will answer a question based on your own knowledge and experience.

Now, listen to the directions for the first writing task.

Actual Tests

TOEFL iBT Writing



Writing Based on Reading and Listening Directions

For this task, you will have three minutes to read a passage about an academic topic. A clock at the top of the screen will show how much time you have to read. You may take notes while you read. You will be able to see the reading passage again when it is time for you to write. You may use your notes to help you answer the question.

You will then have **20 minutes** to write a response to a question that asks you about the relationship between the lecture you have heard and the reading passage. Try to answer the question as completely as possible using information from the reading passage and the lecture. The question does **not** ask you to express your personal opinion.

Typically, an effective response will be 150 to 225 words. Your response will be judged on the quality of your writing and on the completeness and accuracy of the content.

Now you will see the reading passage for 3 minutes. Remember that it will be available to you again while you are writing. Immediately after the reading time ends, the lecture will begin, so keep your headset on until the lecture has ended.

Reading

TOEFL IST Writing

Question 1 of 2



The zebra is unique among the large animals of the African plains in that it has stripes. Zoologists have proposed various theories as to the purpose of these stripes, all of which suggest that the stripes are a product of evolution, as stripes became a tool for survival of the species.

One theory is that the stripes create an optical illusion for the zebra's predators. A lion, for example, perceives that the zebra is closer than it really is, causing the lion to leap toward the zebra in an effort to capture it. But the deceived lion falls short in its leap, allowing the zebra to flee unharmed.

Another possible explanation, related to the first, is that the stripes confuse predators in other ways as well. The repeated pattern of black and white tends to make all zebras in a herd look the same. Thus, the hunter is unable to focus on any individual animal. Zebras traveling in a herd, therefore, are more likely to escape attack.

Finally, the stripes serve as camouflage, as they cause the zebra to blend in with the surrounding natural features. In the zebra's natural habitat—the tall grass of the African savannah—the animal cannot be easily detected by predators passing by at some distance.

All of these suggested purposes are products of evolution. Perhaps the original members of this species had only faint stripes or stripes that were few in number. Those born with darker stripes or with more than the average number of stripes tended to be more likely to survive their predators. By the process of natural selection, therefore, the stripes became more defined and more numerous over millions of years. The present evolved state of the species permits it to thrive in the midst of an otherwise hostile environment by remaining invisible or elusive to its natural predators.

Listening o

TOEFL IBT Writing









Question



Question 1 of 2

Directions: You have 20 minutes to plan and write your response. Your response will be judged on the basis of the quality of your writing and on how well your response presents the points in the lecture and their relationship to the reading passage. Typically, an effective response will be 150 to 225 words.

Question: Summarize the points made in the lecture you just heard, explaining how they cast doubt on points made in the reading.

The zebra is unique among the large animals of the African plains in that it has stripes. Zoologists have proposed various theories as to the purpose of these stripes, all of which suggest that the stripes are a product of evolution, as stripes became a tool for survival of the species.

One theory is that the stripes create an optical illusion for the zebra's predators. A lion, for example, perceives that the zebra is closer than it really is, causing the lion to leap toward the zebra in an effort to capture it. But the deceived lion falls short in its leap, allowing the zebra to flee unharmed.

Another possible explanation, related to the first, is that the stripes confuse predators in other ways as well. The repeated pattern of black and white tends to make all zebras in a herd look the same. Thus, the hunter is unable to focus on any individual animal. Zebras traveling in a herd, therefore, are more likely to escape attack.

Finally, the stripes serve as camouflage, as they cause the zebra to blend in with the surrounding natural features. In the zebra's natural habitat—the tall grass of the African savannah—the animal cannot be easily detected by predators passing by at some distance.

All of these suggested purposes are products of evolution. Perhaps the original members of this species had only faint stripes or stripes that were few in number. Those born with darker stripes or with more than the average number of stripes tended to be more likely to survive their predators. By the process of natural selection, therefore, the stripes became more defined and more numerous over millions of years. The present evolved state of the species permits it to thrive in the midst of an otherwise hostile environment by remaining invisible or elusive to its natural predators.









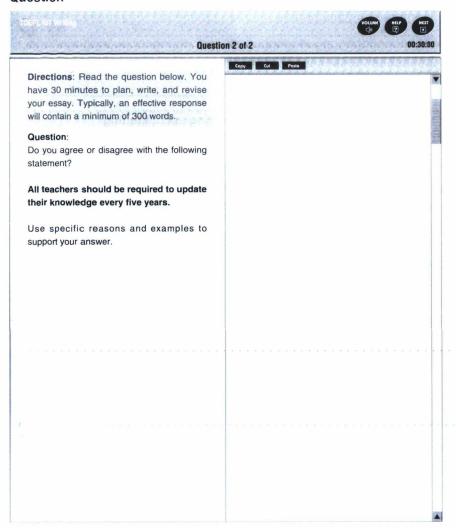
Writing Based on Knowledge and Experience Directions

For this task, you will write an essay in response to a question that asks you to state, explain, and support your opinion on an issue. You will have **30 minutes** to write your essay.

Typically, an effective essay will contain a minimum of 300 words. Your essay will be judged on the quality of your writing. This includes the development of your ideas, the organization of the content, and the quality and accuracy of the language you used to express ideas.

Click on Continue to go on.

Question



TOEFL IBT Writing



Writing Based on Reading and Listening Directions

For this task, you will have three minutes to read a passage about an academic topic. A clock at the top of the screen will show how much time you have to read. You may take notes while you read. You will be able to see the reading passage again when it is time for you to write. You may use your notes to help you answer the question.

You will then have **20 minutes** to write a response to a question that asks you about the relationship between the lecture you have heard and the reading passage. Try to answer the question as completely as possible using information from the reading passage and the lecture. The question does **not** ask you to express your personal opinion.

Typically, an effective response will be 150 to 225 words. Your response will be judged on the quality of your writing and on the completeness and accuracy of the content.

Now you will see the reading passage for 3 minutes. Remember that it will be available to you again while you are writing. Immediately after the reading time ends, the lecture will begin, so keep your headset on until the lecture has ended.

Reading







Question 1 of 2

Though not eaten by humans, menhaden are the main source of fishmeal, which is used as food for chickens and for pen-raised fish, like salmon. Because menhaden are approaching extinction, many states have passed laws restricting the fishing of menhaden so that the population can have time to recover and to continue to supply cheap fishmeal to the industries that depend on it. But there are some disadvantages to such governmental limits, and there are other solutions that may yield the same results.

First of all, some scientists believe that the cause of the decline in menhaden stocks is not overfishing but rather excessive populations of its natural predator, the striped bass. Instead of limiting menhaden fishing, therefore, the government should impose controls on striped bass.

Next, some communities depend on menhaden for their economic welfare. In addition to the fishing industry itself, menhaden harvesting supports other industries indirectly, such as marinas, boat maintenance shops, restaurants, and taverns. If menhaden fishing is restricted, there will be fewer jobs for fishermen and for those working in jobs that support that endeavor.

Also, menhaden perform an important ecological role: They consume enormous amounts of algae, especially those varieties that other fish will not eat. Eating the algae fosters the menhaden's rapid growth, allowing them to serve as food for larger fish, such as striped bass. Being rich in Omega 3 oils, menhaden offer good nutrition for their predators. A limit on menhaden fishing may cause the menhaden population to grow too large relative to the supply of available algae. As a result, many menhaden will not grow rapidly, decreasing their desirability to those above them in the food chain and depriving those species of Omega 3 oils.

Listening own

TOEFL IBT Writing
Question 1 of 2





Question



Question 1 of 2

Directions: You have 20 minutes to plan and write your response. Your response will be judged on the basis of the quality of your writing and on how well your response presents the points in the lecture and their relationship to the reading passage. Typically, an effective response will be 150 to 225 words.

Question: Summarize the points made in the lecture you just heard, explaining how they cast doubt on points made in the reading.

Though not eaten by humans, menhaden are the main source of fishmeal, which is used as food for chickens and for pen-raised fish, like salmon. Because menhaden are approaching extinction, many states have passed laws restricting the fishing of menhaden so that the population can have time to recover and to continue to supply cheap fishmeal to the industries that depend on it. But there are some disadvantages to such governmental limits, and there are other solutions that may yield the same results.

First of all, some scientists believe that the cause of the decline in menhaden stocks is not overfishing but rather excessive populations of its natural predator, the striped bass. Instead of limiting menhaden fishing, therefore, the government should impose controls on striped bass.

Next, some communities depend on menhaden for their economic welfare. In addition to the fishing industry itself, menhaden harvesting supports other industries indirectly, such as marinas, boat maintenance shops, restaurants, and taverns. If menhaden fishing is restricted, there will be fewer jobs for fishermen and for those working in jobs that support that endeavor.

Also, menhaden perform an important ecological role: They consume enormous amounts of algae, especially those varieties that other fish will not eat. Eating the algae fosters the menhaden's rapid growth, allowing them to serve as food for larger fish, such as striped bass. Being rich in Omega 3 oils, menhaden offer good nutrition for their predators. A limit on menhaden fishing may cause the menhaden population to grow too large relative to the supply of available algae. As a result, many menhaden will not grow rapidly, decreasing their desirability to those above them in the food chain and depriving those species of Omega 3 oils.



CONTINUE





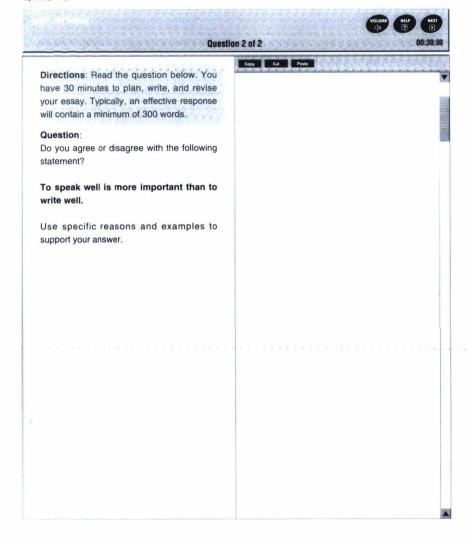
Writing Based on Knowledge and Experience Directions

For this task, you will write an essay in response to a question that asks you to state, explain, and support your opinion on an issue. You will have **30 minutes** to write your essay.

Typically, an effective essay will contain a minimum of 300 words. Your essay will be judged on the quality of your writing. This includes the development of your ideas, the organization of the content, and the quality and accuracy of the language you used to express ideas.

Click on Continue to go on.

Question



How to Master Skills for the

TOEFLE Priting

Basic

Answer Book

Contents

PART 1	Essential Grammar for Writing	
Unit 1	Basic Sentence Structure / Gerunds / Infinitives	220
Unit 2	Participles / Voice	221
Unit 3	Parallelism / Comparison	222
Unit 4	Noun Clauses / Adjective Clauses	224
Unit 5	Adverb Clauses / Conditionals	225
PART 2	Essential TOEFL® Collocations	
Unit 6	School & Education	226
Unit 7	Family & Society	227
Unit 8	Economy & Business	229
Unit 9	Living & Thinking	230
Unit 10	Culture & Leisure	231
. Unit 11	Health & Environment	232
Unit 12	Science & Technology	233
PART 3	Essential Patterns & Expressions	
Unit 13	Agree / Disagree I	234
Unit 14	Agree / Disagree II	236
Unit 15	Preference I	238
Unit 16	Preference II	240
PART 4	Introducing iBT Writing	
Unit 17	Brainstorming & Outlining	242
Unit 18	Note Taking	248
Unit 19	Paraphrasing & Summarizing	251
Actual T	ests	253

Unit 1 Basic Sentence Structure / Gerunds / Infinitives

Check-Up

A

- 1 Laughter improves health (by lowering stress S V O
- 2 Friends are one of the most important influences S V C (on young adults).
- 3 Our city should build a new library (for our children). $\ ^{\circ}$ $\ ^{\circ}$
- 4 I found it helpful to listen to others' advice (when S V O C making an important decision).
- 5 (Every morning,) I exercise.
- 6 A happy life requires an optimistic attitude
- 7 Some people change their jobs (very frequently).
- 8 I was a child (when I lived in a different country). $S \lor V$
- 9 Inexperienced workers earn less money (than S V O experienced ones).
- 10 <u>I could (almost not) breathe</u> (because of the stuffy atmosphere).
- 11 Many immigrants have a hard time (adjusting to S O a new culture).
- 12 Our community offers students various after-S V I.O. various after-D.O.
- 13 Modern apartment buildings are too expensive

 S
 V
 C
 (in my town).

14 Universities give students many opportunities

S V I.O. D.O.

(to learn a variety of subjects).

B

- 1 move → moving or they move
- 2 studying → study
- 3 work → working
- 4 spending → to spend or of spending
- 5 dislike to watch → dislike watching
- 6 none
- 7 exercising → to exercise
- 8 to take → taking
- 9 of meeting → to meet
- 10 to learn → learning
- 11 none
- 12 needing → they need

Writing Practice

A

- 1 Children start learning social skills from their family.
- Secondhand experience is as important as firsthand experience.
- 3 Traveling around the world requires a lot of time and money.
- 4 All of us are responsible for air pollution.
- 5 A biography stimulates my interest more than a novel.
- 6 People tend to behave differently when they wear uniforms.
- 7 Nowadays, students frequently send their friends text messages during their classes.
- 8 Television has a negative influence on our behavior by making us less active.
- 9 The current school curriculum should change to meet the students' various needs.
- 10 An impartial judgment can be made after a thorough examination of all the information.

B

- 1 People believe that money makes them happy.
- 2 Keeping a diary is a good habit.
- 3 I want to live in a dormitory where I can spend time with my school friends.
- Nobody would like cleaning up after others.
- 5 Some people are too arrogant to listen to others.
- 6 There are so many things to explore in the unverse.
- 7 Our priority is spending (or to spend) as much time with our family as we can.

- 8 It is not easy for celebrities to have privacy. or Having privacy is not easy for celebrities.
- 9 Punishing a child physically is not good for education.
- 10 Some countries developed nuclear weapons to defend themselves
- 11 I need a few friends to trust.
- 12 It is difficult to wear Korean traditional clothes properly.

Writing Challenge

A

- Leaders should be good at clear, candid communication.
- 2 I learned the most valuable lessons from my parents.
- 3 Modern people carry their cell phones everywhere they go.
- 4 Tropical rainforests provide us with vast amounts of oxygen.
- 5 When you learn a foreign language, it is important to make good use of dictionaries.
- 6 Universities require their students to maintain good grades
- 7 Modern technology enables us to have face-toface communication with people who live in other countries.
- Mother Nature teaches us things that we cannot learn at school.
- 9 In order to be a good citizen, you should obey the law.
- 10 Riding a bicycle is not only good for one's health but also exciting.
- 11 I would like to travel to every European country.
- 12 Introverted people prefer thinking by themselves to sharing their thoughts with others.

B

- 1 I would rather live in a small town than live in a big city because of the safety factor.
- 2 Some people prefer staying at home to going outside during their vacations.
- 3 We can learn about life by listening to older people.
- 4 In order to have a good friendship, you have to tell the truth to your friends and should not criticize them.
- 5 Since children do not have firm moral standards, they may try to imitate violent behavior on television.
- 6 Reading a book is not always good for your mental health.

Unit 2 Participles / Voice

Check-Up

Δ

- 1 boring
- 2 falling
- 3 are required
- 4 keeping
- 5 has developed
- 6 complaining
- 7 prevented
- 8 shown
- .
- 9 put
- 10 be recycled
- 11 has
- 12 was used

В

- 1 live → living
- 2 polluting → polluted
- 3 used → be used
- 4 tired → tiring
- 5 raising → raised
- none
- 7 using → use
- 8 permitted → be permitted
- 9 elects → is elected
- 10 Addicting → Addicted
- 11 none
- 12 teaching → teach

Writing Practice



- 1 People may find their goals in life by doing their jobs.
- 2 Many philosophical questions are left unanswered.
- By learning by yourself, you can practice reasoning.
- 4 Compared with high school graduates, college graduates may have more job opportunities.
- 5 Before going camping, you should check the weather first.
- 6 We should be prepared for any possible natural disasters.
- 7 Nowadays people are too interested in celebrities' private lives.

- 8 Unsolved environmental problems may threaten our future.
- 9 Some people say teachers should be evaluated by their students.
- 10 We are influenced by younger people as well as older people.

B

- You should not make any noise while watching a movie in the theater.
- 2 Many causes of obesity are known to the public.
- 3 Once acquired, a language may not be forgotten easily.
- 4 Developing countries need help from other countries.
- 5 Some people are deprived of a chance to get a formal education.
- 6 If you work out every day, you will be able to stay in good health.
- 7 By using public transportation, we can reduce air pollution.
- 8 In my opinion, no violence can be justified.
- 9 Cultural differences can be overcome only if we try to accept the differences.
- 10 Judging from human history, it is hard to create a world without war.
- 11 College graduates are often considered to lack practical knowledge.
- 12 Although it has improved the quality of life, industrial development has created many social problems.

Writing Challenge

A

- 1 Nothing can be achieved only by luck.
- 2 Children are easily attracted to something new.
- 3 Even one broken promise may harm a friendship.
- 4 After enduring hardships, you will reach a turning point.
- 5 Before electricity was discovered, we had enjoyed slow-paced lives.
- 6 If more people become interested in social welfare, the world will become a better place to live.
- 7 Sometimes children are confused about whether all the information on television is true or not.
- We are obliged to save the Earth from further destruction.
- 9 While talking to somebody, you should make eye contact with that person.
- 10 If I were allowed to choose where to live, I would live in New York.

- 11 Self-motivated people prefer to work alone.
- 12 Acknowledging that children tend to imitate their parents, the parents should try to become good role models.

B

- 1 Compared with life in a big city, life in a small town sounds more attractive to me.
- 2 For example, spoiled children are very likely to become self-centered adults.
- 3 Judging from my experience, France is more fascinating than any other country.
- 4 Their participation is very encouraging since people always listen to them.
- Very young children are especially easily affected by television.
- 6 In my country, the bear is considered an important animal.

Unit 3 Parallelism / Comparison

Check-Up



- easier
- 2 drinking
- 3 the most beautiful
- 4 informative
- 5 worried
- 6 living
- 7 friendlier
- 8 when they
- 9 to gain
- 10 educational
- 11 the closer
- 12 too fast

B

- 1 their parents → by their parents
- 2 more entertaining → as entertaining
- ${\small 3}\quad \text{most necessary} \rightarrow \text{the most necessary}$
- 4 they want more → the more they want
- 5 intelligent → the most intelligent
- 6 none
- 7 comedy → comic
- 8 than → as
- 9 robust → more robust

- 10 not a dormitory → not in a dormitory
- 11 none
- 12 nor or

12 We can learn as many historical facts from a historical novel as from a history class.

Writing Practice

more books.

Α

- 1 Living in the city is more expensive than living in the country.
- 2 I feel more confident when I am with my friends than when I am alone.
- when I am alone.

 I hope our school will buy more computers, not
- 4 Today, expertise is more important than any other quality in a teacher.
- 5 It costs much more money to run a business than to buy a house.
- 6 A couch potato can neither stay in shape nor have a sound mind.
- 7 Academic achievement is not as important as one's health.
- 8 Adolescents spend more time with their friends than with their parents.
- 9 Junk foods, such as pizza, hamburger, and soda, are not good for one's health.
- 10 People learn the most important lessons in their childhood.

B

- 1 Some adults are as ignorant as children.
- 2 People usually avoid dangerous, dirty, or difficult jobs.
- 3 Being a leader of a group is more stressful than just being a member.
- 4 Teachers should not teach their students to compete with each other but to cooperate.
- 5 Once you graduate from high school, you can either get a job or go to college.
- 6 Some websites are inappropriate for both adults and children.
- 7 Horror movies are usually not only scary but also violent.
- 8 Both newspapers and magazines are good sources for gaining common knowledge.
- 9 You can learn as many things from a book as from your teacher.
- 10 You can wear traditional clothes either on a traditional holiday or at a formal party.
- 11 To become an artist, creativity is as important as any quality.

Writing Challenge

A

- 1 Llike to rest at home better than to play outside.
- 2 Environmental pollution is one of the most serious problems in the world.
- 3 A nuclear weapon is more dangerous than any other weapon.
- 4 In America, the quality of some public schools is not lower than that of private schools.
- 5 Skiing is one of the most popular outdoor activities in winter.
- Nothing is more precious than one's family.
- 7 I find it much more enjoyable to watch movies than to read books.
- 8 Foods at restaurants are not as healthy as foods at home.
- 9 Among the popular summer sports are swimming, surfing, and fishing.
- 10 I believe playing soccer is more beneficial to mental health than playing the piano.
- 11 Neither cash nor a credit card is useful on a deserted island
- 12 I think airplanes are the most useful mode of transportation that we have ever invented.

B

- 1 It is said that games teach cooperation, which is one of the most important factors of success, and they also teach how to overcome challenges.
- You cannot play soccer indoors whereas you can play with either a camera or an animal anywhere.
- 3 The reason why students go to school is not only because they need a formal education but also because they need to learn how to socialize.
- 4 Usually, hand-made materials are not only expensive but also extremely delicate.
- 5 At school or at work, we are always surrounded by a lot of people.
- 6 Since most people spend more time outside than at home, dinnertime is often the only time when all the members of a family get together.

Unit 4 Noun Clauses / **Adjective Clauses**

Check-Up



that

2 that

3 which

Whether what

5

6 who or that

how

which

whose

10 What

11 that

12 whether



which → that

what → that

who → whose

that → what

which → where 5

none

7 that → where or in which

what → that

9 why → if

10 none

11 Who → Those who or People who

12 none

Writing Practice



- 1 I would like to travel to a country where I can learn a new culture.
- 2 People who want to maintain their health should have regular workouts.
- It takes a lot of time to find a job which can satisfy all your needs.
- 4 It is true that we can learn valuable lessons from the past.
- 5 A person who has an optimistic attitude toward his life can endure any hardship.

- 6 Setting priorities means that you put the things to do in order.
- 7 I do not understand why we should wear school uniforms.
- 8 Peer pressure is one reason why some students can't stay out of trouble.
- 9 Some people cannot break their bad habits, which harm their health.
- 10 What kind of person you wish to become is more important than what kind of job you will have.



- 1 I like to visit a museum that has a lot of paintings.
- 2 It is interesting to talk to a person whose personal taste is different from mine.
- 3 I want to become a scientist who studies outer space.
- A vacation is a time when we can enjoy a slow-paced
- Not every person who has a lot of knowledge is wise.
- 6 Some people argue that globalization has normalized various cultures.
- 7 The scientific knowledge we learned at school is sometimes useful in our daily lives.
- People who do not exercise regularly are usually in bad shape.
- 9 The report says that school uniforms hinder students from expressing their personalities.
- 10 It is recommended that patients with high blood pressure avoid stressful situations.
- 11 Many countries are trying to develop new energy sources which can replace fossil fuels.
- 12 By reading fiction, I could learn others' feelings which I had never known before.



- I believe parents know what is best for their children.
- Hand-made items which lack creativity are usually not so expensive.
- I wish to live with a person whose cultural background is different from mine.
- 4 Many parents expect their children to become people who are better than others.
- It is important for me to have a friend with whom I can travel.
- If you become physically challenged, you will know how lucky healthy people are.

- 7 I do not want to become an arrogant person who looks down on others.
- 8 Many high school students do not know what they want to do after graduation.
- 9 Good social leaders always think about what they can do for society.
- 10 Doctors study how they can protect people from various diseases.
- 11 Violent video games can negatively affect children, who are immature psychologically.
- 12 I respect King Sejong, whose best achievement was the invention of the Korean alphabet, called Hangeul.

B

- If I live with a roommate of my choice, with whom I can share a room more comfortably, I can bring up and solve problems easily.
- 2 To be honest, I doubt if there is anything we can learn from games.
- 3 If you do not know what your goal is, you may not be able to endure any hardships.
- 4 Middle school students are too young to know what they have to learn at school.
- 5 Students who wear school uniforms are less likely to get into trouble than students who do not wear school uniforms.
- 6 If I could make one, I could visit some national leaders in our history and tell them what they should and should not do.

Unit 5 Adverb Clauses / Conditionals

Check-Up

A

- People feel satisfied when they are praised for what they have done.
- 2 As long as you do not face your problem, you cannot solve it.
- 3 Children will be much healthier if they do not eat fast food.
- 4 Before you quit your job, you should give notice to your employer.
- 5 Some teachers want their students to attend class even if they get sick.

- 6 Since I grew up in a big city, I did not have many chances to see wildflowers.
- 7 Even if you live in a foreign country, you cannot learn its language without making an effort.
- 8 As we all know, every human being is destined to die someday.
- 9 While students attend a summer camp, they can participate in various outdoor activities.
- 10 While (or Whereas) some people prefer hiking in the mountains, others prefer swimming in the sea.

B

- such → so
- 2 survive → have survived
- 3 have → had
- 4 none
- 5 are not willing → are willing
- 6 while → when
- 7 none
- 8 Before → In case
- 9 none
- 10 As long as → As soon as
- 11 Unless → Since
- 12 that → so that

Writing Practice

A

- 1 When we watch commercials, we can get a lot of information about various products.
- 2 Until I achieve my goal in life, I will never give up.
- 3 Since I was born. I have never left my home country.
- 4 Whereas some people feel comfortable in following others' orders, others don't.
- 5 If you share a room with someone, you will not have much privacy.
- 6 Unless a company pays back a loan in time, it may go bankrupt.
- 7 Some people are so materialistic that they think money can resolve any problem.
- 8 Once you decide on a field of study that you want to pursue, you should discuss it with your teacher.
- 9 Before you ask for others' help, you should try to solve your problem alone.
- 10 In a city, you can buy necessities easily because convenience stores are everywhere.

B

- 1 I wish I did not have to wear a school uniform.
- You cannot make good friends until you build up trust.
- 3 The world economic recession seems to be getting worse as time goes by.
- 4 If you were immortal, you might be able to eat as much junk food as you wished.
- 5 I feel confident speaking in front of others only when I am prepared. or Only when I am prepared do I feel confident speaking in front of others.
- 6 If you become a resident in a community, you should participate in some community activities.
- 7 If you study with others, you may get distracted easily.
- 8 As long as we have freedom of speech, we can form public opinion.
- 9 We will run out of clean water before long because we keep polluting the rivers and seas.
- 10 Some people are so foolish that they do not realize how important nature is.
- 11 Since students have a long summer vacation these days, they can travel to other countries.
- 12 If I were the president, I would invest more in education.

Writing Challenge



- 1 If I live in a big city, I will visit a museum every weekend.
- 2 People do not know the value of health until they lose it.
- 3 I like summer because it brings back memories of my childhood.
- While (or Whereas) most children like snow, most adults hate it.
- 5 If it were not for nuclear weapons and terrorism, the world would be a much safer place.
- 6 Once you form a study group with others, you should follow the rules of the group.
- 7 In case you get lost in a foreign country, you'd better carry a map of the area.
- 8 If people think more deeply, they will know sports are important to adolescents.
- 9 Some people do not care about what kind of work they do so long as they earn a lot of money.
- 10 If parents keep dealing with the problems their children cause, the children may not be able to learn responsibility.

- 11 An optimistic attitude is good for your mental health since it protects you from getting depressed.
- 12 Though the number of well-educated teachers is increasing, students still feel like studying abroad.

B

- 1 I wish I could live in a small town since I want to spend much time with my neighbors.
- Whether you win or lose, you can have enough fun while you are playing a game with others.
- 3 If humans continue destroying nature, there will be no natural resources left in the next century.
- Whereas most children have their parents to take care of them, some children do not have parents or a house to live in.
- 5 If everybody could use the school library, we would not have to build a public library.
- 6 If we had learned about life by our own experiences, we would not have known how others thought differently about their lives.

Unit 6 School & Education

Check-Up

Basic Drill A

- 1 expand one's knowledge
- 2 lecture in class
- 3 be competent in
- 4 work as a team
- 5 career preparation
- 6 earn a credit
- 7 form a study group
- 8 share ideas with someone
- 9 a secondary school
- 10 study abroad
- 11 attend a summer camp
- 12 develop expertise in

Basic Drill B

- 1 real life experience
- go through puberty
- 3 put a priority on
- 4 organize one's thoughts
- 5 begin formal education
- 6 get a good grade
- 7 offer an educational opportunity
- 8 prevent school violence

- 9 learn by oneself
- 10 gain knowledge from
- 11 assign homework to someone
- 12 pursue one's individual interest

Writing Practice

A

- have a strong impact on
- 2 work as a team
- 3 share a room with
- 4 prevent school violence
- 5 make a change in
- 6 Learning by yourself
- 7 With the help of
- 8 offer an educational opportunity
- 9 gain updated information
- 10 face your problem
- 11 expand your knowledge
- 12 get involved in outdoor activities

B

- 1 I want to major in biology at university.
- Teachers provide class materials for their students if necessary.
- 3 In middle school, I attended a summer camp and made many friends.
- 4 Many public and private schools require students to wear school uniforms.
- 5 Studying with a group is often not as efficient as studying by oneself.
- 6 If you live in a dormitory, you can get to know people from other cultural backgrounds.
- 7 Children usually have a strong curiosity about things they have not seen before.
- 8 In my opinion, to begin formal education at the age of 6 is too early.
- 9 I believe most optional subjects are as important as compulsory subjects.
- 10 Many companies require their employees to be competent in computers.

Writing Challenge

- 1 Teachers and students all have to participate with enthusiasm in a class discussion.
- 2 It costs a lot of money for parents to make their children study abroad.

- 3 Besides pursuing knowledge, people also attend a university to do their career preparation.
- 4 All the students should have the opportunity to do outdoor activities.
- 5 Schools provide students with opportunities to increase their potential capabilities.
- 6 The goal of writing a book report is to share ideas with others about the book you read.
- 7 As you write, you will be able to organize your thoughts better.
- 8 Sometimes, people learn by making a mistake.
- 9 Some students do not want to go to school because they feel peer pressure.
- 10 I believe that every student should be required to read a book every week.
- 11 In order to promote creative thinking, some people explore nature.
- explore nature.

 12 Real life experience is as important as knowledge

from school.

- 13 School life includes not only attending classes but also getting along with other students.
- 14 The government should increase the education budget so that every school can have its own library.
- 15 Every person has a choice of whether to live or to
- 16 If we have a long summer vacation, we can use it to develop expertise in a certain field.
- 17 In my opinion, every elementary school teacher should have a diploma in psychology.
- 18 I prefer watching TV to reading books because I can gain knowledge from TV more easily than from books.
- 19 Once you form a study group with others, you should follow the rules of the group.
- 20 Some people commit crimes because they only put a priority on personal gains.

Unit 7 Family & Society

Check-Up

Basic Drill A

- 1 agree to obey
- 2 support a family
- 3 have a sense of community
- 4 visit one's neighborhood
- 5 feel connected
- 6 pledge loyalty to

- 7 show leadership skills
- 8 live in a suburban area
- 9 drop in at a shopping center
- 10 gain the support of
- 11 participate in community activities
- 12 teenage delinquency

Basic Drill B

- 1 improve public transportation
- 2 build a monument to
- 3 become a resident of
- 4 show respect to
- 5 be in need of help
- 6 practice a particular religion
- 7 make a contribution to
- 8 follow in one's footsteps
- 9 be emotionally attached to
- 10 be committed to
- 11 form an organization
- 12 build social skills

Writing Practice



- 1 get along with
- 2 form an organization
- 3 make a contribution to
- 4 has a tendency to
- 5 have more of a sense of community
- 6 feel secure
- 7 follow in a same-sex parent's footsteps
- 8 show respect to
- 9 use public transportation
- 10 participate in community activities
- 11 making important decisions for
- 12 reminds me of



- 1 Parents try to pass on their values to their children.
- 2 You have to build up trust first in order to make a good friend.
- 3 I believe nobody wants to be isolated from others.
- 4 Even if they disagree with their parents' rules, children should agree to obey them.
- 5 The government should use its revenues for those people who are in need of help.
- 6 I want to get a job so that I can afford to buy a car.
- 7 In order to resolve a problem, you have to understand the problem first.

- 8 People get addicted to the Internet because they want to feel connected with others.
- 9 Students have to keep it in mind that their dreams are more important than anything else.
- 10 It is generally agreed that Korean people do not like to speak in public.

- 1 Students have to decide what to do for a living in the future before they graduate from school.
- 2 It is hard to support your family without making sacrifices yourself.
- 3 Once you make a promise, you should be committed to keeping it.
- 4 Young children treat their pets like toys.
- 5 Since we have freedom of speech, we can form public opinion regardless of our age.
- 6 Parents have high standards for their children because they love their children.
- 7 As a way to improve public transportation, I suggest running the subway 24 hours a day.
- 8 Some people say teenage delinquency is necessary for the mental development of adolescents.
- 9 I want to have a close relationship with all of my classmates.
- 10 In Korean culture, people usually do not build a monument to a living person.
- 11 Dependent children are often too emotionally attached to their parents.
- 12 It is our duty to pass on our good values to our children.
- 13 In order to practice a particular religion, you have to obey the rules of that religion from the bottom of your heart.
- 14 You cannot be a good teacher until you show leadership skills to your students.
- 15 In my view, people have to live in different places before putting down their roots in one place.
- 16 People tend to be hospitable to a member of their group.
- 17 If you live in a suburban area, you will have a lot of chances to know your neighbors.
- 18 Children usually build their social skills for the first time in kindergarten.
- 19 Before trying to gain the support of your family, you should try to do without their help.
- 20 If you visit a friend's neighborhood, you may understand your friend better.

Unit 8 Economy & Business

Check-Up

Basic Drill A

- 1 compensate for
- 2 split the cost of
- 3 make a profit
- 4 find employment
- 5 boost the economy
- 6 keep a good work environment
- 7 pay back a loan
- 8 climb the corporate ladder
- 9 make ends meet
- 10 lower the interest rate
- 11 seek a career in
- 12 raise the prestige of

Basic Drill B

- 1 obtain an entry-level position
- 2 discourage productivity
- 3 leave one's job
- 4 a defective product
- 5 work overtime
- 6 get a refund on
- 7 make a budget for
- 8 develop interpersonal skills
- 9 be on the market
- 10 work part-time
- 11 overcome an economic recession
- 12 submit one's résumé

Writing Practice

A

- 1 have a positive attitude towards
- 2 obtains an entry-level position
- 3 encourage competition
- 4 work overtime
- 5 leave your job
- 6 make up for their losses
- 7 Getting a promotion
- 8 cannot afford to
- 9 returning corporate profits to society
- 10 get a refund on
- 11 charges higher prices
- 12 lower the interest rate

- B
- When you apply for a job, you have to submit your résumé.
- Even garbage is an important element to make a profit in the country.
- 3 It is not easy for people to be willing to sacrifice themselves.
- 4 The quality of a product raises the prestige of the company which made the product.
- 5 In order to get a high position in a company, you should develop interpersonal skills.
- 6 Many students try to get internships to build their careers while they are in college.
- 7 Before applying for a job, you should make sure if you meet the qualifications of the job position.
- 8 You have to call in late in case you cannot go to work on time.
- 9 Before spending money on something, companies make a budget for it.
- 10 These days computers are in great demand, so we can see computer commercials on TV very often.

- 1 It is important to understand the market principles to be successful in a business.
- 2 Some companies never fire employees but allow them to retire from their jobs.
- 3 Interest rates are one of the most important factors to boost the economy.
- 4 If a company does not have enough money to pay back a loan, it may end up going bankrupt.
- 5 It is essential to increasing productivity to keep a good work environment.
- 6 If you want to hire a person in your department, you have to explain a job description.
- 7 A number of people should work very hard in order to make a living.
- 8 One of the best aspects of having a job is earning
- 9 Public schools would lack revenue if we did not pay taxes.
- 10 You must compete with others in order to climb the corporate ladder.
- 11 In a group project, you can feel a sense of accomplishment and share it with others.
- 12 Nobody would like a manager who bosses people around.
- 13 You have to minimize your cost of living to save money for the future.

- 14 It is more effective to complain in writing than to complain in person.
- 15 When two companies work together, they can split the cost of production.
- 16 I prefer getting paid by the hour to getting paid by the day, because my job requires me to work overtime all the time.
- 17 Everyone's effort is needed to overcome the economic recession.
- 18 If you call in sick every week, nobody will believe you.
- 19 Many people want to be self-employed these days.
- 20 A company cannot urge its employees to devote their whole lives to the company.

Unit 9 Living & Thinking

Check-Up

Basic Drill A

- 1 harm a friendship
- 2 adapt to a situation
- 3 take medicine
- 4 relieve one's stress
- 5 break a bad habit
- 6 have regrets about
- 7 suffer sleep deprivation
- 8 hone a skill
- 9 endure hardship
- 10 move to a new place
- 11 make a careful decision
- 12 set a goal

Basic Drill B

- 1 tell the truth
- 2 set one's priorities
- 3 behave in a different way
- 4 live by a rule
- 5 have a workout
- 6 harm a friendship
- 7 provide good nutrition for
- 8 reach a turning point
- 9 do an impulsive act
- 10 have common sense
- 11 take one's side
- 12 a passing ceremony

Writing Practice



- 1 plan ahead
- go on a shopping spree / get stressed out
- 3 take advantage of
- 4 look up to
- 5 endure hardships
- 6 get into trouble
- 7 after careful thought
- 8 lives by a rule
- 9 save money for a rainy day
- 10 look down on
- 11 take a short rest
- 12 takes my side



- In my view, human nature is good, but people sometimes make mistakes.
- 2 A punctual person makes a good impression on others.
- 3 Getting a regular workout is helpful to your physical health
- 4 Sometimes getting a new job is reaching a turning point in life.
- 5 I have trust in my family, so I share my secrets with them.
- 6 I try to put up with others' mistakes because I may make the same ones.
- 7 In order to maintain good relationships with others, you should have good interpersonal skills.
- 8 In order to be healthy, it is important to provide good nutrition for yourself.
- 9 Having common sense has little to do with being intelligent.
- 10 If you want to be happy, it is important to have an optimistic attitude towards life.

- 1 If you have a lot of things to do, you should set your priorities before taking action.
- 2 Some people are afraid of speaking in public because they are not confident in themselves.
- 3 If you can take the risk of starting over, you will not be afraid of failure.
- 4 Because of peer pressure, some students cannot stay out of trouble.
- 5 Good relationships with others increase one's quality of life.

- 6 Some people cannot break their bad habits because they are addicted to those habits.
- 7 It is not wise to judge others by their appearances.
- 8 Sometimes, slowing down is the fastest way.
- 9 Keeping a secret does not always make you a good person.
- 10 Immigrants have difficult times because they should adapt to a new situation.
- 11 Some people are extremely critical of others but very generous in evaluating themselves.
- 12 A lack of communication with your family is not beneficial to your mental health.
- 13 I have a sociable character, so I cannot put up with staying at home alone.
- 14 It is better to consult with your doctor before taking medicine if you are worried about any side effects.
- 15 Being sincere to yourself means telling the truth to yourself.
- 16 Frustration is only a passing ceremony to adolescents if they are equipped with courage.
- 17 Unsuccessful people tend to have a pessimistic attitude while successful people are optimists.
- 18 You should make a careful decision when you choose your major in university.
- 19 The world would be boring if everyone had the same taste in everything.
- 20 Optimistic people try not to have regrets about what they cannot change.

Unit 10 Culture & Leisure

Check-Up

M Basic Drill A

- 1 travel abroad
- 2 get motion sickness
- 3 dress in a traditional costume
- 4 during recess
- 5 save face
- 6 respect cultural differences
- 7 keep a first-aid kit
- 8 experience jet lag
- 9 engage in a cultural activity
- 10 make a reservation
- 11 a cultural legacy
- 12 show creativity

Basic Drill B

- 1 a copycat crime
- 2 develop a research center
- 3 recharge one's batteries
- 4 carry on an activity
- 5 hold a party
- 6 model oneself on someone
- 7 lead public opinion
- 8 play a musical instrument
- 9 take a break from one's routine
- 10 exercise one's imaginative power
- 11 celebrate a festival
- 12 hand down a tradition

Writing Practice



- 1 respect cultural differences
- 2 dress in the traditional costumes
- 3 a guided tour
- 4 make a film about
- 5 save face
- 6 lead public opinion
- 7 make history
- 8 take a break from their routines
- 9 giving (or expressing) an opinion
- 10 be attracted to
- 11 appreciate art
- 12 become an idol to teenagers

B

- 1 I engage in various cultural activities during my free time
- 2 Summer is a great season to enjoy outdoor activities.
- 3 When you play a sport, you should follow certain rules.
- 4 I cannot recharge my batteries when I spend my free time with others.
- 5 When you travel to a foreign country, it is important to follow the local customs.
- 6 We can learn about our ancestors by going to see what is on exhibit in museums.
- 7 We are obliged to hand down our traditions to our descendants.
- 8 Adopting a custom from another country is one way to develop our own culture.
- 9 If we had enough of a budget, we could celebrate the festival with more people.
- 10 Whether you notice it or not, television may affect your behavior.

Writing Challenge

- When you travel abroad, you may experience jet
- 2 Some people do not want to go traveling because they get severe motion sickness.
- Camping is better than staying at a hotel because I like to make a bonfire.
- You should make a reservation in advance for a live performance
- Nowadays, television decides what is in voque tomorrow
- 6 To make many friends, you should carry on a variety of activities.
- 7 It is cheaper to subscribe to a newspaper than to buy it on newsstands.
- 8 Even if I dress in the costume of a queen, it does not make me a queen.
- 9 Every person has a knack for something.
- 10 If you exercise your imaginative power, you can communicate with children better.
- 11 A couch potato would not understand the beauty of
- 12 Parents should recommend their children to make their own rules.
- 13 Students should not be allowed to use their cell phones during recess.
- 14 If you live in a rural area, it will be hard to attend a live performance.
- 15 It can be dangerous to give a ride to a stranger on
- 16 You may not know why you should celebrate national holidays if you do not learn history.
- 17 When someone speaks a different language from you, you have to be more attentive.
- 18 I believe that students can show creativity in art or music classes.
- 19 In my opinion, violent movies have a lesser effect on copycat crimes than television news does.
- 20 If I have an opportunity to go abroad, I want to go to Europe.

Unit 11 Health & Environment

Check-Up

Basic Drill A

- life expectancy
- 2 stay in shape

- healthy eating habits
- prohibit smoking
- get over an illness an endangered animal
- lower one's blood pressure
- in critical condition
- 9 receive sufficient nutrition
- 10 educate the public
- 11 urban sprawl
- 12 care for the handicapped

Basic Drill B

- non-renewable resources
- 2 do daily exercise
- 3 high in calories
- cause damage to the environment
- 5 save tropical rainforests
- a desperate food shortage
- 7 consume natural resources
- 8 a dense population
- purify polluted air
- 10 conduct medical research
- 11 sustainable energy resources
- 12 keep a well-balanced diet

Writing Practice



- am allergic to
- a desperate food shortage
- cure a patient of a disease
- receive sufficient nutrition
- 5 Educating the public
- 6 adapt to the environment
- 7 preserving the environment
- Q cause damage to the environment
- gets a physical check-up
- 10 urban sprawl
- 11 be short of
- 12 sustainable energy resources



- Foods in fast-food restaurants are high in calories.
- If you try to exercise every day and to stay ir shape, you will have a healthier life.
- Some doctors spend their lives not treating patients but conducting medical research.
- Taking a rest after work is a good way to lower your stress level.

- 5 Some people believe that they can get over an illness only with medical treatment.
- 6 My uncle chose to become a vegetarian to lower his blood pressure.
- Without saving the tropical rainforests, it is impossible to stop global warming.
- 8 Keeping a well-balanced diet is as important to your health as exercising regularly.
- 9 In order to prevent water pollution, the government strictly forbids companies from dumping factory waste into rivers.
- 10 Painkillers should be available only by prescription to prevent people from overusing them.

Writing Challenge

- 1 We should prohibit smoking in public places to protect non-smokers.
- protect non-smokers.

 2 Hygiene education is very important to protect
- 3 Natural resources like charcoal or petroleum are non-renewable resources.

people from being infected with disease.

- 4 Healthy eating habits can decrease the risks of heart-related illness.
- 5 Using less water and carrying one's own cup help preserve the environment.
- 6 Eating less and doing daily exercise are the best ways to diet.
- 7 While it is easy to pollute the air, it is very hard to purify polluted air.
- 8 Getting sleep when you are stressed out is not always good for your mental health.
- 9 A dense population has caused a serious increase in the temperature in our city.
- 10 Every living thing consumes energy, but humans consume the most energy.
- 11 It is more important to prevent a disease than to heal the disease.
- 12 The next generation will not be able to consume as many natural resources as we do.
- 13 Students should learn at school how we can care for the handicapped.
- 14 Even though life expectancy has increased over the years, many people still die at a young age.
- 15 Our government is managing public medical facilities very well to compete with private medical facilities.
- 16 Due to careless exploitation, the tropical rainforests of the Amazon are currently in critical condition.
- 17 Optimistic people rarely come down with illnesses.

- 18 People who eat foods which are high in calories must exercise regularly.
- 19 If we can relieve the overpopulation of our city, the traffic problems will be also solved.
- 20 People living in urban areas are more exposed to car exhaust than people living in rural areas.

Unit 12 Science & Technology

Check-Up

Basic Drill A

- 1 interact with
- 2 create a new trend
- 3 make an adjustment
- 4 do something by hand
- 5 a technological development
- 6 advance medical science
- 7 transfer a file
- 8 attach a file to an email
- 9 key something into a computer
- 10 search for information
- 11 shorten the distance
- 12 develop computer technology

Basic Drill B

- 1 space exploration
- 2 peer-to-peer sharing
- 3 cut off spam
- 4 make progress
- 5 handle something improperly
- 6 send a space probe to
- 7 reach a remote place
- 8 explore outer space
- 9 be under the gravity of
- 10 stay up to date with technology
- 11 conduct research on
- 12 develop a nuclear weapon

Writing Practice



- Exploring outer space
- 2 create online communities
- download software from
- 4 shutting down a computer

- 5 make a long-distance call
- 6 made progress
- 7 develop nuclear weapons
- 8 expose children to
- 9 making an in-depth analysis of
- 10 peer-to-peer sharing 11 provide us with a chance
- 12 turn off the TV

B

- 1 These days, email service providers are trying to develop efficient ways to cut off spam.
- 2 I believe the use of the Internet does not facilitate communication but impedes it.
- 3 If you know how to connect to the Internet, it is easy to learn how to explore it.
- 4 If a stranger transfers a file, you should not open it as it may contain computer viruses.
- 5 There are more important things to do on the Earth than to send a space probe to other planets.
- 6 Traffic problems near shopping centers have reduced as many people make online purchases.
- 7 Space exploration existed only in science-fiction novels a few decades ago.
- 8 It is much easier and more accurate to process information with a computer than to use your brain.
- 9 I doubt there has been any progress since humankind launched a space mission.
- 10 Thanks to the Internet, searching for information has become easier than before.

Writing Challenge

- 1 The purpose of space exploration is to find other planets which humans can control.
- 2 Before signing up for a website, you should read the terms of membership carefully.
- 3 Many people can keep in touch with their old friends through the Internet.
- 4 Radical advances in technology are considered one cause of recent environmental problems.
- 5 The government should make it easier for the handicapped to gain access to information.
- 6 It is necessary for us to change the power resources of electronic appliances to protect the environment.
- 7 Some people do not know how to program a computer though they use it every day.
- 8 It is hard to stay up to date with technology as it progresses so rapidly.

- 9 Genetic engineering has made a great difference in many aspects of our lives.
- 10 We can do more things with our cell phones than just making wireless communications.
- 11 People have used the Internet to get information and interact with others.
- 12 Without the aid of cutting-edge technology, ancient people could build great walls and pyramids.
- 13 Reading more books and watching less television is the key to deep thinking.
- 14 Modern technology is so advanced that we may not be able to make a significant breakthrough any
- 15 Computer technology could reach the current state since people did not stop making adjustments.
- 16 Our government should explain why we need to conduct research on outer space.
- 17 Because of the negative consequences of globalization, some countries do not want to keep in step with globalization.
- 18 People without the basic knowledge of computers are called computer illiterate.
- 19 Our government has spent a fortune to advance medical science.
- 20 Since cellular phones are now an integral part of modern life, many people think they cannot do without their cell phones.

Unit 13 Agree / Disagree!

Check-Up

- 1 I agree that a feeling of accomplishment is more important than a salary.
- In my opinion, automobiles have done us more good than harm.
- 3 To sum up, it is good for children's emotional development to read fiction.
- There is no question that making quick decisions often gives us the wrong answers.
- It is evident that borrowing money from a friend can damage the friendship.
- 6 I firmly believe that it is a good rule to prohibit smoking in public places.
- In short, home-made food costs less than the food at restaurants.
- 8 I do not hold with the idea that people do not need to travel because they can explore the world through the Internet.

- 9 I am in favor of the idea that students should learn more than two foreign languages at school.
- 10 I disagree with the opinion that technological development isolates people from each other.
- 11 I firmly believe that water pollution is one of the most serious problems we have.
- 12 I go along with the idea that capital punishment should be terminated.
- 13 There is no doubt that we can learn many things from the elderly.
- 14 Personally, I think that school uniforms prevent students from expressing their personalities.
- 15 I do not hold with the notion that the government is not responsible for poverty at all.
- 16 I agree that teachers should give students daily homework.
- 17 In brief, I prefer staying home to going outside on holidays.
- 18 In summary, people earn money in order to be happy in the end.
- 19 I agree that the government should prohibit the advertising of alcohol and tobacco on television.
- 20 I do not agree that it is more important to learn knowledge from studying than it is to develop creativity.
- 21 In my view, people can get healthier if they do not eat junk food.
- 22 It is evident that violent movies can incite adolescents' aggressive behavior.
- 23 I firmly believe that it is more important to spend time with one's family than it is to spend time at work.
- 24 I go along with the opinion that our ancestors enjoyed life more than we do.

Writing Practice

A

- 1 I do not hold with the idea that people succeed by luck, not by hard work.
- 2 I go along with the opinion that watching television has a negative effect on children.
- 3 I disagree that middle and high school students should learn art and music as compulsory subjects.
- 4 I am not in favor of the idea that only the rich can be considered successful.
- 5 I agree that childhood is the most important period in one's life.

B

It is evident that movies are as entertaining as novels and short stories.

- 2 There is no question that teachers' salaries should be determined by their students' achievements.
- 3 I contend that dancing has played a huge role in enriching our culture.
- 4 No one can deny that children's academic achievements are more affected by their peers than by their parents.
- 5 In my view, there is nothing people can learn from fictional stories.

C

- 1 In short, experiences gained through hardships become the foundation for a successful future.
- 2 I have come to the conclusion that people can communicate more effectively only when they see each other in person.
- 3 In summary, modern technology helps students to learn more things in a short period of time.
- 4 In brief, you do not need to feel pressured to do what you do not want to do.
- 5 In conclusion, we can learn invaluable lessons from fictional books.

Writing Challenge

>> Example

Agree

I agree that money is the most significant reason why people get a job. Because we cannot buy food, clothes, or other necessities without money, we need to get a job to afford our expenses.

Disagree

Not every person wants to have a job for the money. It is evident that there are more important reasons for having a job, such as what kind of job it is, what kinds of people you work with, and how much you like the job.

1

Agree

I firmly believe that universities should spend as much money on sports activities as they spend on libraries. Knowledge is of no use if students lose their health, so it would be helpful for universities to invest money in sports facilities and encourage students to take part in sports activities.

Disagree

I disagree that students' sports activities are important enough for universities to spend the same amount of money as they do on libraries. Not every student enjoys sports activities, but all the students need a good facility where they can concentrate on their studies.

2

Agree

I go along with the idea that traveling in a group led by a tour guide is the best way to enjoy a trip. There are two reasons for this. First, you do not need to worry about getting lost. Also, you can save a lot of money by traveling in a group with other people.

Disagree

I do not hold with the opinion that the best way to travel is a guided tour. In my view, traveling alone is more fun because you can go to anywhere you want.

3

Agree

I agree that high school students should be able to choose their courses without any limitations. Students will pay more attention to their classes if they are learning what they want to know.

Disagree

It is evident that students should not be allowed to take only the courses that they want to study. If they are given such options, students will take only easy courses and avoid possibly boring but important courses.

.

Agree

I firmly believe that clothes change people's behavior. Students try not to get into trouble when they are wearing their school uniforms because they can be easily identified by their uniforms.

Disagree

There is no question that human behavior has nothing to do with one's clothes. If we could change people's behavior with clothes, we would be able to reform criminals by changing their clothes.

r

Agree

I am in favor of the idea that the mass media tends to dig excessively into the personal lives of famous people. I believe that we do not have to know what they do in their free time unless they commit crimes cr harm others' lives.

Disagree

In my view, it is unavoidable for public figures and celebrities to be exposed to the mass media. The media would not be interested in the private lives of those people if they were not famous.

Unit 14 Agree / Disagree II

Check-Up

- 1 I support the idea that students can develop their imaginations by reading novels.
- 2 I do not think it is impossible for universities to give a scholarship to every student.
- 3 As a result of globalization, people don't feel many cultural differences these days.
- 4 There is a saying, "A friend in need is a friend indeed."
- 5 In my experience, parents can be the best friends for their children because they always take their side.
- 6 I am against the opinion that women should stay at home to take care of their children.
- 7 I question whether it is educational to allow children to watch TV commercials.
- 8 For example, passive viewers prefer entertaining programs to informative ones.
- 9 To give you an idea, I will explain how an optimistic attitude can change a person's life.
- 10 I object to the notion that people who take risks are the only ones who can get good chances.
- 11 I support the idea that it is important to partcipate in extracurricular activities.
- 12 Consequently, I believe that people who are attracted to dangerous sports cannot stand their daily routines.
- 13 I am against the opinion that people cannot learn anything from their experience.
- 14 It is said that people should be able to take care of themselves when they are isolated.
- 15 I object to the notion that it is a waste of tme to listen to popular music.
- 16 It is reported that many parents make their children read biographies.
- 17 I question whether people acknowledge the importance of moral education or not.

- 18 To give you an idea, I will give several reasons why we need a hospital in our community.
- 19 There are several reasons why some students are more successful in learning language than others.
- 20 In my experience, people do not always tell the truth.
- 21 For instance, we can observe animals at a short distance in zoos.
- 22 I am against the opinion that museums are the best places where children can learn about their ancestors.
- 23 As a result of the invention of the light bulb, people can read books at night without their eyesight being damaged.
- 24 Studies indicate that junk foods are one of the major causes of obesity.

Writing Practice

A

- 1 I object to the notion that playing games has anything to do with learning how to live one's life.
- 2 I do not think it is more advantageous to be a group member than to lead a group.
- 3 I support the idea that companies should guarantee lifelong employment.
- 4 I am against the opinion that older people cannot learn lessons from younger people.
- 5 I support the idea that our judgment of someone should not be based on how he or she looks.

B

- It is said that teenagers learn how to make important decisions either by making mistakes or through their own experiences.
- 2 According to recent research, coeducation is more helpful for both male and female students for several reasons.
- 3 Consequently, we can get a lot of information about a country by watching commercials for that country.
- 4 It is reported that external appearances are not reliable when you judge a person's character.
- 5 There are several reasons why children should be taught a foreign language in elementary school.

C

1 To give you an idea as to why people are treated differently when they wear different clothes, I will present two examples.

- For instance, nobody will work hard to raise his productivity if a company never fires its employees.
- 3 To give you an idea, I will discuss how much children can enjoy nature by living in rural areas.
- 4 In my experience, there have always been bad consequences whenever we destroy ecosystems.
- 5 For instance, children can share their opinions about what they saw on TV with their friends.

Writing Challenge

Example

Agree

I support the idea that some decisions are too important to be made by one person. People can make better decisions if they discuss their problems with their family and friends.

Disagree

I am against the idea that a person should consult with others before making an important decision. Since every person should be responsible for his own decision in the end, you have to make a decision by yourself.

1

Agree

I firmly believe that technology has made our lives more convenient. As a result of technological developments, we can even buy clothes on the Internet.

Disagree

I am against the opinion that we have made the world a better place to live because of technology. In my experience, technology has only made our lives busier and more complex.

2

Agree

I support the idea that attending a live performance gives you more pleasure than watching it on TV. If there were no difference, people would not spend a lot of money to watch a performance with their own eyes.

Disagree

I disagree that it is better to watch a performance with your own eyes than to watch it on TV. To support my opinion, I would like to present three advantages of watching a performance on TV.

Agree

It is said that if people are familiar with history and literature, they can communicate very well with others. Therefore, I go along with the statement that history and literature are more important to study than science and mathematics.

Disagree

I question whether we can measure the value of history, literature, science, and mathematics themselves. However, I firmly believe that science and mathematics are more useful for our daily lives than literature and history.

4

Agree

I do not think you can enjoy a game when you are losing. Therefore, I agree that people have fun playing a game only when they win.

Disagree

In my opinion, the reason why people play a game with others is that they want to spend time with others without worrying about winning or losing. As a result, people can enjoy the game even when they lose.

5

Agree

In my experience, it is always better not to borrow money from a friend. If you do not pay back the money on time, the friendship may be harmed.

Disagree

People say that a friend in need is a friend indeed. For this reason, I do not think that friendship will be damaged if you borrow money from a friend of yours.

Unit 15 Preference I

Check-Up

- 1 Given the choice between classical music and popular music, I would choose the latter.
- 2 My view on school rules is that students should be involved in the process of making the rules.
- 3 I prefer being with my friends to being with my

- family because it is more fun to hang out with my friends.
- 4 Humans need comfortable houses to live in. Similarly, endangered animals need safe habitats to dwell in.
- 5 Watching a sporting event cannot compare with playing one.
- 6 In spite of medical developments, people still suffer from many illnesses.
- 7 Obedience is similar to loyalty because people who are loyal are always obedient.
- 8 Despite the benefits of a new high school, I want to have a new shopping center in our community instead.
- 9 On a cold day, staying home may be comfortable. Nevertheless, I prefer going out to staying indoors.
- 10 Although students have some courses they do not want to learn, they are required to take all of them.
- 11 Despite the fact that languages and cultures are different, we can make good foreign friends.
- 12 Children love to spend most of their time playing video games. Nonetheless, they should be prohibited from playing these games.
- 13 Compared with the city, the countryside is better for children's emotional development.
- 14 Between a person with an optimistic attitude and a person with a pessimistic attitude, my preference is the optimistic person.
- 15 Unlike an automobile, a train is a more efficient means of transportation.
- 16 I prefer working on a team to working independently because I can share ideas with the other members.
- 17 My view on this issue is that sociable people usually get along well with others.
- 18 Advertising is very important in business. Even so, it cannot be a substitute for the quality of products.
- 19 Love cannot compare with anything else because people cannot be happy without love.
- 20 A stress-free life is similar to sleeping for one's whole life.
- 21 In spite of high life expectancies, people do not make much of an effort to maintain their physical health.
- 22 Group studying can save you much time. On the contrary, you can end up getting distracted and chatting.
- 23 I prefer eating at restaurants to preparing and eating food at home because eating out is more convenient.
- 24 You should not judge a book by its cover. In the same way, you cannot know a person by his or her appearance.

Writing Practice

A

- 1 Given the choice between living at a fast pace and living at a slow pace, I would choose the former.
- 2 In my opinion, it is better to live where I can enjoy different seasons than to live where the climate does not change at all.
- 3 I prefer having my friend as a roommate to sharing a room with a stranger.
- 4 Between planning free-time activities beforehand and enjoying my free time without a plan, my preference is to plan ahead.
- 5 My view on this issue is that adolescents are more influenced by their families rather than their friends.

B

- 1 As a way of spending free time, indoor activities cannot compare with outdoor activities.
- 2 From my point of view, when you are not satisfied with some product or service, filing a complaint in writing is similar to doing nothing.
- 3 Unlike discussion classes, lecture classes are boring in most cases.
- 4 In my experience, studying with your friends is similar to reading a book backwards.
- 5 Many teenagers do not tell their parents about their lives. On the contrary, they talk and spend most of their time with their friends.

C

- 1 Although I admit reading is a good way of learning, I believe it is more effective to learn by listening to others.
- Some people say serious movies are boring.
 Nevertheless, I like movies that make me think.
- 3 You may have closer relationships with your coworkers at a small company. Even so, I would not choose a small company because it is more likely to go bankrupt than a large company.
- 4 Living in one place for one's whole life may have some advantages. Nevertheless, I would prefer to move from one place to another for a better environment.
- 5 Despite the fact that children can learn a lot of things at school, I believe it is more important for them to play with their friends.

Writing Challenge

Example

Live in a big city

It seems attractive that I could make close relationships with my neighbors if I lived in a small town. Even so, I still want to live in a big city. One advantage of a big city is that there are so many cultural events, so we can always find something to do to amuse ourselves.

Live in a small town

Between living in a small town and living in a big city, my preference is the former for safety reasons. In a big city, people neither know who lives next door to them, nor are they concerned about their neighbors' safety. Thus, I would like to live in a small town where everyone looks after one another.

1

Travel with a companion

People have different reasons for traveling. In my case, I like to travel in order to make good memories. But I believe that the memories will be useless if there is no one to share them with. Thus, I prefer traveling with a companion to traveling by myself.

Travel alone

If you travel with a companion, you will have to spend almost 24 hours a day with the person even if you do not want to. Because I would want some time to be alone when I travel, I would rather go traveling by myself than travel with a companion.

2

Do what you already do well

Even if you are an expert at something, you may not be as good as you used to be if you don't practice from time to time. Thus, in my opinion, it is better to do what I am good at over time than to try what I have never done before.

Try new things

It is safer to do what I am good at than to do what I have not tried before. Nevertheless, I cannot learn new things if I only do the activities I can already do. For this reason, I would choose to try a new thing if given the choice between what I do well and what I have not done yet.

Learn by yourself

If you are taught something from a teacher, you may be able to save some time. Nonetheless, I have learned from my experiences that it is better to learn by myself because I can take as much time as I want to in order to understand what I have learned.

Learn from a teacher

I prefer learning from a teacher to learning by myself. Teachers give us the best routes to obtain knowledge. Without such guidance, we cannot know if we are learning properly.

4

Basic needs on Earth

Even though it is important to learn as much about outer space as we know about Earth, we should acknowledge that there are so many people in need on Earth. If we put the ongoing space projects on hold for one year, we could probably serve more than one million meals to hungry people.

Exploring outer space

Some people believe that humans can live on Earth for at least another thousand years, so exploring outer space is unnecessary. Even so, we cannot predict the future. So we should prepare for it, and space exploration is one way to prepare for the future.

5

Work by hand

Whenever I work with machines, I do not feel like I am the one who is working. So, in spite of its convenience and efficiency, I try to work by myself rather than to use machines because I enjoy doing things without any help.

Work with machines

I prefer working with machines to working by hand.
Usually, it is more efficient and time-saving to use machines than to work by hand.

Unit 16 Preference II

Check-Up

- 1 Aside from playing video games, children prefer watching television to reading books.
- 2 An optimistic attitude helps you overcome hardships. In addition, it encourages others to endure hardships.
- 3 Presumably, a theme park is a better place to spend time with your family than a library is.
- 4 I wish I could travel to many foreign countries before going to university.
- 5 Suppose you were blamed by your teacher, but you did not think it was your fault.
- 6 Students who break school rules get punished. In other words, they should follow the rules.
- 7 In consideration of the increased importance of English in our country, many students choose to study abroad.
- 8 I would rather wear a school uniform than spend lots of money on buying new clothes.
- 9 Despite their benefits, fossil fuels worsen air pollution. Moreover, some of them will run out in the near future.
- 10 From my point of view, it is better to do nothing than to watch TV.
- 11 Staying at home is preferable to standing in line for a whole day at an amusement park.
- 12 If I were an employer, I would hire an experienced worker at a higher salary.
- 13 I wish I could travel back in time to meet the famous philosopher Socrates.
- 14 Some people spend their money too easily. In particular, they like to go on shopping sprees.
- 15 We can protect endangered animals by saving the rainforests. In addition, doing this can help prevent further air pollution.
- 16 Presumably, no one may want to live alone without any friends for his whole life.
- 17 Let's assume that the government spends a lot of money exploring outer space.
- 18 In consideration of the need for a new education facility, I want our community to build a high school.
- 19 Suppose students would feel less peer pressure if they wore school uniforms.
- 20 Many children watch TV for too many hours every day. More importantly, they see too much violence on TV.
- 21 As we have seen, freshmen can get many kinds of help from their seniors by living in a dormitory.

- 22 Let's assume that catching a cold has to do with cold weather.
- 23 In particular, my opinion on this issue is that students should be allowed to choose what they want to learn.
- 24 If people were not able to afford food for their children, they would feel hopeless.

Writing Practice

A

- 1 I would rather buy a piece of jewelry than buy tickets to a concert because it is a good way to invest my money.
- 2 Eating at home is preferable to eating at restaurants because I can eat healthy food at home.
- 3 I would rather live in a dormitory than spend a lot of time finding an apartment to live in.
- 4 From my point of view, it is better to spend time with a small number of close friends because I can even share my private secrets with them.
- 5 Purchasing computers is preferable to buying books since students can read electronic books on the Internet.

B

- 1 Let's assume that students rarely exercise, so they will have some health problems.
- 2 Presumably, every person needs a friend whom he can ask for advice when he is in trouble.
- 3 Suppose you don't have a penny when you need money for an emergency.
- 4 If I had several short vacations instead of a long one, I could keep myself refreshed at school all throughout the year.
- 5 If the government ignored meeting the basic needs of our society, the poor would suffer more.

C

- Nobody can precisely judge a person's character after meeting him/her only once. In other words, first impressions are not trustworthy.
- 2 Everybody has a different perspective, even between friends. More importantly, different perspectives usually cause fights between friends.
- 3 Good friends can help me get out of trouble. In addition, they can sometimes be my teachers in life.
- We definitely need a clean environment in which to live. In particular, we won't be able to live for even a moment if there is no air to breathe.

5 As we have seen, taking opportunities is not only a shortcut but also the best way to success.

Writing Challenge

Example

Buy a house

If I cannot make a profit out of a business, I may lose all the money. Therefore, I would rather purchase a house than invest my money in a business.

Buy a business

I can have both a house and a business if I purchase the business first. In other words, I should purchase a business first so that I can buy a house with the profits from the business.

1

Prefer hand-made items

I prefer hand-made products to machine-made ones. First, hand-made items are more sophisticated than machine-made ones. More importantly, hand-made items can be owned only by a small number of people because of their scarcity.

Prefer machine-made items

Presumably, it takes more time to make products by hand than by machine, so hand-made items are usually more expensive than machine-made ones. Therefore, I would rather buy a machine-made item than a hand-made one.

2

Live in a traditional house

I would rather live in a traditional house than live in a modern apartment building. In a traditional house, I can have my own garden, where I can plant flowers.

Live in an apartment

I wish to live in a modern apartment building since it is more convenient to live there than in a traditional house. In addition, it is much safer to live in a modern apartment building than to live in a traditional house.

3

Others' advice

From my point of view, it is better to learn about life by listening to others' advice than by depending on our personal experiences. If we only paid attention to our own experiences to learn about life, we would not know what others think about their lives.

Personal experience

Let's assume that it is better to learn about life by listening to others. As people have different perspectives, they usually do not understand what I really expect in my life. So I prefer learning about life through my own experience to learning by listening to the advice of family or friends.

4

A lot of valuable information

The Internet is one of the most convenient tools with which you can find valuable information. You can read newspapers and magazines more conveniently on the Internet. In addition, you can get help from the Internet when you do research for your homework or prepare for a presentation.

Too much information

In consideration of its mixed values, people should know that the Internet can be harmful to adolescents and children. As many young people do not have enough knowledge to judge the quality of the information they read on the Internet, they can get exposed to harmful information without any protection.

5

Many subjects

Let's assume that students should choose their majors as soon as they enter their university. They probably have too little information to decide on their majors right away. Therefore, they should have the opportunity to take classes in many subjects in their first and second years before deciding on their majors.

One subject

From my point of view, it is more important to know one subject thoroughly than to have a superficial knowledge of many subjects. For this reason, I prefer specializing in one subject to taking classes in various subjects.

Unit 17 Brainstorming & Outlining

Practice with Agree/Disagree Questions



A. Brainstorm

Agree

- 1 spend more time with each other
- 2 more interests & values in common
- 3 develop each other through competition or cooperation

Disagree

- 1 emotional & financial support
- 2 experienced advice & guidance
- 3 long-term influence

B. Outline

and the	rigide		Anree
		e	rigite

- Classmates affect a child's success at school more than parents do.
- Reason 1 Classmates spend more time with each other.
- Reason 2 Classmates usually have more interests and values in common.
- Reason 3 Classmates help develop each other through competition or cooperation.

Disagree >> Opinion

- A child's success at school depends more on parents than on classmates.
- >>> Reason 1 Parents support a child emotionally as well as financially.
- Reason 2 Parents help a child have a good attitude to others.
- Reason 3 Parents have a long-term influence on a child.



A. Brainstorm

Agree

- 1 salary earned = a worker's value
- 2 financial independence
- 3 important motivation for working hard

Disagree

- 1 self-fulfillment & satisfaction
- 2 contribute to society
- 3 learn how to cooperate with others

B. Outline

Agree

I agree that the most important reason Opinion

why people have jobs is to earn as much

money as possible.

The salary earned equals a worker's value Reason 1

at a company.

Reason 2 People have jobs to gain financial

independence in the end. Reason 3 People will not work hard if they are paid

a small sum of money for their work.

Disagree

Opinion There are many important aspects of a

job other than the salary.

Reason 1 You can fulfill and satisfy yourself through

vour work.

Reason 2 You contribute to society by doing your

work.

You can learn how to cooperate with Reason 3

others to achieve a goal.

3

A. Brainstorm

Agree

- cause & effect → governing principle of the universe
- persistency & effort → more important
- luck goes to those who work hard

- need luck to defeat hardworking competitors
- cannot control many factors
- without luck → too much time to succeed

B. Outline

Agree

Opinion It is evident that luck does not make

anvone successful.

Everything in the universe is governed by Reason 1 the principle of cause and effect.

Reason 2 Successful people are always hard workers

who never give up.

Reason 3 Heaven helps those who help themselves.

Disagree

Opinion In my opinion, people who succeed in

their lives are not only hardworking but also lucky.

Reason 1 If all your competitors work hard, the only

thing you need to defeat them is luck.

Reason 2 You cannot control all the factors even if you really want to succeed in life.

Reason 3 It usually takes so long to succeed without any luck in modern society.



A. Brainstorm

Agree

good neighbors

low crime rates

slow-paced life → emotional development



a lot of cultural experiences

2 more educational opportunities

convenient to live in

B. Outline

Agree

Opinion In my view, rural areas are more adequate places for children to grow up in than urban areas.

Reason 1 Neighbors in the countryside are friendlier than those in a big city.

Reason 2 The crime rates in rural areas are much lower than those in urban areas.

> Reason 3 The slow-paced life in nature contributes to children's emotional development.

Opinion There is no question that urban areas are better for children to grow up in than rural areas.

Big cities provide a variety of cultural Reason 1 events that children can participate in.

Reason 2 Big cities offer more educational opportunities than small towns.

Reason 3 Big cities are more convenient for children to live in than rural areas.



A. Brainstorm

Agree

can use speech & body language

more honest communication possible

fewer possibilities to misunderstand

Disagree

more comfortable

correct communication, especially if writing

need not care about how you look

B. Outline

Agree

Opinion I strongly agree that people can interact with each other more effectively in a faceto-face situation.

Reason 1 You can use body language as well as speech.

Reason 2 People tend to be more honest when they can see each other's facial expressions.

Reason 3 There are fewer possibilities to misunderstand each other's messages.

Disagree

In my opinion, letters, email, and telephone Opinion calls are better means to communicate with others.

Reason 1 People tend to express their feelings more comfortably when they do not see the other person's face.

When using letters or email, you can Reason 2 express your thoughts more correctly.

Reason 3 As the other person cannot see you, you don't have to worry about how you look.

6

A. Brainstorm

Agree

- lack of experience & knowledge
- what young people know -- already known to older people
- do not know how to teach

Disagree

- 1 different perspectives
- 2 more up-to-date knowledge
- remind old people of what they learned in the past

B. Outline

Agree

Opinion In my experience, there is nothing that old people can learn from younger people.

Reason 1 Compared to older people, young people usually lack experience and knowledge.

Reason 2 Even if young people do have knowledge,

it is already known to older people in most cases.

Reason 3 More often than not, young people do not know how to teach what they know to others

Disagree

Opinion I disagree with the opinion that the old cannot learn anything from the young.

Reason 1 Young people can offer different new perspectives on some issues older people have.

Reason 2 Young people tend to have more upto-date knowledge in scientific or technological areas.

Young people can remind older people of Reason 3 what they learned in the past but might have forgotten.



A Brainstorm

Agree

- electronic devices → more convenient daily lives
- long-distance communications possible
- predict natural disasters

Disgaree

- cause environmental problems
- isolate individuals
- more dangerous

B. Outline

Agree Opinion

I strongly support the idea that technology has improved the world.

Reason 1 Electronic devices have made our daily lives more convenient.

Reason 2 The Internet and mobile communications technology enable us to communicate with people regardless of where in the world they live.

Reason 3 Modern technology helps us predict natural disasters and take action in advance.

Disagree

Opinion I question whether there has been any improvement in the quality of life as a

result of technological developments.

Reason 1 Technological developments have worsened environmental problems.

Reason 2 Technology such as TV and the Internet isolates a lot of individuals from society.

Reason 3 The development of military weapons has made the world a more dangerous place to live.

8

A. Brainstorm

Agree

- 1 can learn from his/her own mistakes
- 2 mostly minor mistakes
- 3 advice or criticism → lose self-confidence

Disagree

- 1 possibly a fatal mistake
- 2 bitter advice → what a real friend should do
- 3 may get disappointed later

B. Outline

Agree

Opinion I agree that it is better to let a friend make a mistake than to say or do something about it.

Reason 1 Every person grows by learning from his/ her own mistakes.

Reason 2 A friend's mistakes are mostly minor ones which do not call for advice or other actions.

Reason 3 Your advice or criticism can make the friend lose his/her self-confidence.

Disagree

Opinion You should intervene when a friend makes a mistake even if it could ruin the friendship.

Reason 1 The mistake may turn out to be fatal to the friend.

Reason 2 Being a good friend includes giving bitter advice when necessary.

Reason 3 If you did not say or do anything about a friend's mistake, he/she might get disappointed in you later.

Practice with Preference Questions

1

A. Brainstorm

Learn by oneself

- 1 develop reasoning skills
- 2 develop researching skills
- 3 not easily forgotten

Learn with a teacher

- 1 people need guidance
- 2 learn communication as well
- 3 takes a shorter time

B. Outline

Learn by oneself

- Opinion I firmly believe that it is better to learn by oneself than to learn with a teacher.
- Reason 1 You may be able to learn how to reason while trying to understand the concepts.
- Reason 2 Since you will find the sources of information by yourself, you will learn how to do research.
- Reason 3 You will not easily forget things that you have struggled to master.

Learn with a teacher

- Opinion In spite of the benefits of learning by oneself, I believe that the best way to learn something is to be taught by a teacher.
 - Reason 1 People need someone who can guide them when they have no idea where to start.
 - Reason 2 You can also practice communicating with others while talking to your teacher.
 - Reason 3 It takes a shorter time to learn with a teacher than to learn by oneself.

2

A. Brainstorm

Many subjects

- 1 a wide range of knowledge
- 2 helps choose a particular major
- 3 maximizes educational effects

One subject

- 1 can be an expert
- 2 no unnecessary study load
- 3 many subjects → superficial knowledge

B. Outline

Many subjects

Opinion Given the choice between learning many subjects and one subject, I would like to learn as many subjects as I can.

Reason 1 I can gain a wide range of knowledge in

Reason 2 I need to know about as many subjects as possible in order to decide which field

to pursue for my career.

Reason 3 Since every field of study is interrelated, I
can maximize the effects of my education.

One subject

Opinion I would rather specialize in one subject than learn many subjects.

Reason 1 I can be an expert in that particular field.

Reason 2 I can reduce any unnecessary study loads

if I focus on only one subject.

Reason 3 Learning many subjects is very likely to end in my having superficial knowledge.



A. Brainstorm

Spend on computer technology

- 1 a more convenient life
- 2 leads to medical development → long life
- 3 a stronger country

Spend on basic needs

- 1 main duty of the government
- 2 technology does not help the poor
- 3 food shortage & housing problem

B. Outline

Spend on computer technology

Opinion I think that governments should spend the majority of their revenues on developing computer technology.

Reason 1 If computer technology develops, everybody will be able to enjoy more convenient lives.

Reason 2 The development of computer technology can lead to medical developments,

thereby lengthening people's lifespans.

Reason 3 The development of computer technology is an important measurement in showing

the power of a country.

Spend on basic needs

Opinion In my opinion, governments should spend as much money as possible on basic needs such as food, shelter, healthcare, and education.

Reason 1 Meeting the basic needs of society is the main duty of governments.

Reason 2 Computer technology is almost useless for the poor.

Reason 3 There are still so many hungry, homeless people.



A. Brainstorm

Work for a large company

- 1 higher salaries & better fringe benefits
- 2 experience various kinds of jobs
- 3 a pleasant working environment

Work for a small company

- 1 closer relationships with colleagues
- 2 easier to get a promotion
- 3 less of a workload

B. Outline

Work for a large company

Opinion I think that it is more beneficial to work for a big company than to work for a small company.

Reason 1 Big companies usually offer higher salaries and better fringe benefits.

Reason 2 You can have more chances to get experience doing various kinds of jobs.

Reason 3 Big companies spend a lot of money on creating a pleasant working environment.

Work for a small company

Opinion In my opinion, a small company is a better place to work at than a big company.

 Reason 1 Employees at a small company have closer relationships with each other.

Reason 2 As the number of employees is smaller, it is easier to get promotions.

Reason 3 You can have less of a workload at a small company than at a big company.



A. Brainstorm

Eat out

1 save time

- 2 various kinds of food
- 3 convenient for meeting people

Eat at home

- 1 healthy foods
- 2 cheaper
- 3 a more relaxed atmosphere

B. Outline

Eat out

Opinion Given the choice between eating out and eating at home. I would like to eat out.

Reason 1 As I don't have to cook if I eat out, I can

save time.

Reason 2 At restaurants, I can enjoy various kinds of food from different cultures.

Reason 3 A restaurant is a more convenient place to meet people.

Eat at home

Opinion Compared to eating out, eating at home is a better decision.

Reason 1 Hardly any restaurants serve foods as healthy as those you prepare at home.

Reason 2 Since you do not need to pay any tips and taxes, it costs you much less money.

Reason 3 You can feel more relaxed and take your time eating.

6

A. Brainstorm

Travel with a companion

- 1 save money
- 2 less bored while traveling
- 3 safer

Travel alone

- 1 a flexible schedule
- 2 an independent spirit & more adventure
- 3 can concentrate on the trip

B. Outline

Travel with a companion

Opinion From my perspective, traveling with a friend is more enjoyable than traveling alone.

Reason 1 You can save money by sharing accommodations and transportation fees.

Reason 2 Since you can talk to your companion, you will feel less bored while traveling.

Reason 3 It is definitely safer to travel with a companion than to travel alone.

Travel alone

Opinion I would rather travel by myself than travel with a companion.

Reason 1 If I travel alone, I will be able to manage my schedule more flexibly.

Reason 2 By traveling alone, I can develop an independent spirit and experience more adventure.

Reason 3 Since I don't need to worry about another person, I can concentrate on my trip.

7

A. Brainstorm

Valuable information

- 1 can get updated information quickly
- 2 free information
- 3 can get feedback from all over the world

Too much information

- 1 children exposed to harmful information
- 2 misleading information
- 3 online scams

B. Outline

Valuable information

- Opinion I go along with the idea that the Internet is a useful source of information.
- Reason 1 The Internet provides updated information about almost every subject with just one click.
- Reason 2 Most information on the Internet is accessible free of charge.
- Reason 3. You can get feedback on anything from all over the world.

Too much information

- Opinion I agree that excessive amounts of the information on the Internet cause problems.
- Reason 1 Children are easily exposed to harmful information on the Internet.
- Reason 2 Much of the information on the Internet is misleading or just wrong.
- Reason 3 Innocent people can be victims of online scams.

8

A. Brainstorm

Spend free time outdoors

- 1 good for health
- 2 can enjoy nature
- 3 can socialize with more people

Spend free time indoors

- 1 less expensive
- 2 can enjoy regardless of weather
- 3 less exhausting

B. Outline

Spend free time outdoors

- Opinion I would rather participate in outdoor activities than indoor ones.
- Reason 1 Doing outdoor activities such as soccer and hiking is good for one's health.
- Reason 2 Outdoor activities can give you good opportunities to enjoy nature.
- Reason 3 Outdoor activities enable you to socialize with more people.

Spend free time indoors

- Opinion In my view, doing indoor activities is a better way to spend my free time than participating in outdoor activities.
 - Reason 1 Indoor activities cost less money than outdoor activities.
- Reason 2 Indoor activities are enjoyable regardless of the weather conditions.
- Reason 3 Most indoor activities do not need much physical effort, so they are less exhausting.

Unit 18 Note Taking

Check-Up

A

- 1 SUVs (gas 1) vs. smart cars (gas 1)
- 2 re: megastores esp. good for busy ppl (b/c one-stop shopping)
- 3 convenience self-checkout systems > cashiers (b/c can be used anytime)
- 4 early retirement w/o enough money → depression

- buzz marketing word of mouth b/t many ppl
- 6 web-based surveys → freedom † (∵ conducted w/o human interaction)
- 7 cost computer vt sys. < paper vt sys.
- 8 self-deception esp. big prob, w/ substance abuse
- 9 menhaden ↓ → birds that feed on it ↓
- 10 college edu. best invstmnt in one's life

B

Example

Self-deception causes our ¹workplace productivity to suffer ²diminishing levels of return. Prolonged bouts of ³self-deception, such as a strong addiction to television or computer games, can cause work levels to diminish to dangerously ⁴low levels.

- 1 ¹Trace fossils are traces left behind by a creature, rather than ²body fossils of the creature itself. Some such trace fossils are of ³footprints or ⁴dung that was preserved in the elements over time.
- 2 Human cloning is the ¹copying of human genetic tissue material. It is performed by taking an ²egg cell from a donor, removing the ³nucleus, and adding the genetic material to be cloned, therefore forming a ⁴new cell.
- 3 ¹TV addiction can lead to many problems with ²socialization and ³workplace productivity for those who suffer from it. TV addiction often increases to problematic levels when it occurs in conjunction with a decreased number of ⁴interpersonal relationships with others.
- 4 Sometimes doctors hate to work in ¹rural areas to help sick and injured people who do not have access to a hospital. The reasons for this unwillingness are that the ²equipment in rural clinics is often poor, the patients do not always ³cooperate, and the level of sterility in the operating rooms is ⁴inferior.
- 5 The ¹economic theory of utility measures the level of ²consumer satisfaction with a product. For example, if a man likes the ³hamburgers at restaurant #1 better than at restaurant #2, the utility of the first hamburger is ⁴higher for that consumer.
- The ¹exploration of space has resulted in a number of improvements in ²science and general knowledge. Just a few of the many inventions that have resulted from the space program include ³the microwave oven and firefighting equipment. Additionally, the space

program has increased man's knowledge of Earth with regards to various fields of study such as ⁴meteorology and cartography.

Practice with Note Taking

A

1

¹ Wind Farms ² large land ³ energy cost

2

¹ nose-in parking ² gas mileage ³ recycling features

3

¹ accessible ² large quans ³ one-stop shopping

4

¹ confusion & misunderstanding

² expensive

3 worth effort

5

¹ anytime ² human interaction ³ instant

6

1 cost 2 instant 3 counting errors

B

1

W: Let's talk about some of the advantages of using wind farms to generate energy. Unlike fossil-fuel-based energy sources, wind farms do not create pollution such as sulfur or greenhouse agents like carbon dioxide. Also, they are less expensive to build and operate than fossil fuel refineries. Finally, they can create perpetual energy so long as the wind blows.

1 CO.

² fossil fuel refineries

³ perpetual energy

2

M: You know, lots of people actually dislike smart cars. They think that they have a lot of negative aspects. These people believe that smart cars are too small for families with children or people who need to carry heavy loads in their cars. Some people also think smart cars are rather ugly. Besides, since these cars are very light and small, they are unsafe if hit by a big, heavy SUV.

1 small

² ualy

3 safety

3

W. Let's discuss the negative aspects of having megastores around us. There are actually quite a few. Some customers complain that they tend to get lost when trying to find items at megastores. They also say it is hard to get good service, and it's especially difficult to find employees who are knowledgeable and helpful. People who like to purchase items in small amounts often find that the quantities in these stores are often bigger than what they need, so they end up wasting much of what they buy, especially fresh produce.

³ fresh produce

¹ get lost ² service quality

Λ

M: Don't believe that buzz marketing is always going to fail. There are some advantages to buzz marketing, too. After all, this form of marketing avoids many of the weaknesses of mass marketing. For example, it manages to make consumers feel as if they are personally being targeted. This, in turn, inspires the customers themselves to spread news about the product by word-of-mouth. This causes the target audience to get a more personal attachment to the product and also to understand why they need to have the product for themselves.

¹ individually ² word-of-mouth ³ personal attachment

5

W: Let's think about web-based surveys for a bit. There are actually a number of bad things about them. Web-based surveys often lead to incomplete answers because there is no one to oversee the surveys while they are being completed. Furthermore, sometimes people will repeatedly take the survey, which may heavily slant the survey in favor of results that are not accurate at all.

¹ overseer ² incomplete ³ inaccurate

6

M: There are a number of benefits to paper voting methods like punch ballots or write-in ballots. For example, paper voting costs less in small-scale local elections since no expensive electronic machines are needed. Also, it is more reliable than electronic voting because machines can break down or give faulty results. Furthermore, paper systems hold up better as evidence in court when the results are doubted.

¹ cost ² reliable ³ legal evidence

C

¹ brand recognition ² highest quality

3 one-way bookkeeping

M: Though you may have read about the benefits of franchises, not everything about franchises is actually good. For example, they have sprung up everywhere, making many places look the same. You see the same golden arches of McDonald's in both New York City and in places in Kansas, Also, they create their products in one place and send them to the franchise, but this may actually cost more. Isn't this rather inefficient considering that flour produced in Kansas must be shipped all the way to the main factory in New York only to be sent back to Kansas to the franchise? Finally, take a look at the bookkeeping that must be done. What happens when there are different tax laws in different states? You can't use one-step bookkeeping in that case.

1 the same 2 cost 3 diff. tax laws

2

1 brought back 2 family ² physical attributes

3 heart transplant

W: I must say I, like many others, believe that human cloning is wrong. There are a number of reasons we feel this way. First of all, many opponents of human cloning liken it to playing God. This means that scientists who clone human tissues are making decisions and creating life that people feel only God should be able to make. They feel that there is absolutely no way to carry out human cloning under ethical and moral constraints. Another grave concern about cloning is that it will accidentally produce destructive strains of mutant viruses that scientists cannot control. These viruses could run rampant over Earth, killing anybody who is in their path. Finally, some people fear the cloned human baby could be harmed during its creation or acquire some disability caused by faulty laboratory procedures.

1moral & ethical ²mutant viruses 3disability

3

1 faster ² prices ³ customer-specific services

M: Unfortunately, supermarket self-checkout systems have a number of disadvantages. Using the selfcheckout systems, stores can save time, but customers can't. It will take time for them to scan each item and place it in a bag. Also, using the systems can be a nightmare when customers need help removing a product they purchased by accident. It's practically impossible to fix things when the machine reads the barcode improperly and there is no one around to ask for help. In addition, customer-specific advertisements can encourage customers to buy unnecessary things.

1 time-saving ² barcode errors ³ unnecessary items

1 cheaper ² fair judgment ³ traffic policemen

W: Class, you may have noticed that speed cameras are everywhere since some people think they are good things to have. Well... there are some negative points to them, too. Some people think speed cameras are a form of "Big Brother surveillance," and that upsets them. These cameras are everywhere, watching and taking pictures. This worries people since they do not want to have their pictures in police files. Furthermore, people think speed cameras sometimes make recording errors, forcing them to go to court to contest speeding tickets. And some people point out that the cameras do not always prevent speeding because the driver might reduce his speed only when passing a camera.

1 "Big Brother surveillance" ² dispute in court

3 slowing

5

1 interactive ² real-time updating ³ distribution

M: Did you enjoy reading those web-based storybooks? Not really? Well, I think I can tell you why. First of all, since anyone can publish them on the Internet, there is no way to ensure quality control. In other words, many times these books are poorly assembled with links that don't even work. And if the company goes under, the story is gone forever as well. Plus, you need to connect to the Internet in order to read a web-based storybook. Since there's no paper, you can't underline important things or take notes on the pages. Nor can you drag your desktop computer out to the beach or read in your bed at night if that's where you enjoy reading the most.

1 quality control 2 take notes 3 desktop

1 discuss & clarify ² subjects

³ personal / profssnl reltshps

W: You know, group study is not always as good as people say that it is. It is not effective when in-depth studying for a single subject is required. In this case, group work tends to lessen individual productivity. Also, group study is less desirable if students must come up with individualized answers rather than ones agreed on by the group. It is easy to forget one's own opinion when other people give their own opinions rather forcefully. Also, the group is likely to distract members from studying and can lead to the wasting of valuable study time.

Unit 19 Paraphrasing & Summarizing

Practice with Paraphrasing

1	(A)	2	(C)	3	(B)	4	(C)
5	(A)	6	(A)	7	(B)	8	(B)
0	(C)	10	(1)	11	(D)	12	(0)

B

- 1 The decision was made by the school board that math and science would be the focus of the new curriculum.
- When it comes to human development, some people may think more highly of literature than science.
- 3 In the 1920s, American pop music was greatly affected by jazz.
- 4 The experiment will be rescheduled on account of the weather.
- 5 Europeans consider the winter moth one of the most harmful insects to plants.
- 6 Students get better at class discussions and get better grades on tests via group studying.
- 7 The failings of English aristocrats were often ridiculed by Victorian literature.
- 8 The advent of the Internet has made geopolitics more complex.
- 9 A skin growth consisting of cancer cells is a melanoma.
- 10 Copernicus affected more people's lives than most others have.
- 11 Until they are allowed to take off by the airport authorities, airplanes must remain on the ground.

- 12 Much ocean life is unknown to people.
- 13 American women's long struggle for equal rights was not easy.
- 14 The toxins emitted into the atmosphere from industrial plants become acid rain.
- 15 Dinosaurs have been extinct for many millions of vears.
- 16 Hemophiliacs can die from wounds that cause uncontrolled bleeding.
- 17 The Pilgrims moved from England to America for religious freedom.
- 18 Without a doubt, the Wild West's most dreaded criminal was Jesse James.
- 19 Breaking from tradition, schools are now stressing math and science education.
- 20 Subjects without any practical value cause students to lose interest.

Practice with Summarizing



		m	

Summary

Key words go to college / learn a trade / enter a profession / the love of learning

People attend college for different

reasons.

.

Key words the microwave oven / cook food / without using the power / without using as many

pots, pans, and utensils

Summary The microwave oven has made cooking

faster and more convenient.

2

Key words violence on TV / violent video games / increased violent behavior

Summary Exposure to violent images can cause

violent actions.

3

Key words universities / spending a lot of money on sports / better students and faculty

Summary Investment in sports might ensure better

recruits for universities.

4

Key words good system / reduces traffic / saves

money / lessens harm

Summary Efficient public transportation improves

the living environment.

¹ individual productivity

² individualized

³ personal study time

5		Summary	The space program has enabled us to
Key words	bicyclists / lack of bike paths and		know more about Earth in many fields of
	sidewalk access / American cities		study.
Summary	Riding a bike in the city is inconvenient in		
	America.	В	
		1	
6		Summary	The U.S. preserves many areas as
Key words	eighty percent / part-time job / work full-	Guilliary	national parks.
	time / little time for academics		national parks.
Summary	The majority of American college students	2	
	cannot concentrate on their studies due	Summary	Medical developments are helping people
	to their jobs.		to live longer and healthier lives.
7		3	
Key words	cell phone usage and noise / decline in	Summary	The use of embryonic stem cells for
	the quality of civic life / self-centered		medical advances is controversial.
	outlook		
Summary	Cell phones have made our society	4	
	debased and selfish.	Summary	Living in big cities is too expensive.
8		5	
Key words	rise in Earth's temperature / melting of	Summary	Thanks to big budgets, modern movies
	glaciers / increased hurricane activity /		provide many wonderful things to see.
_	erosion of the beaches		
Summary	Earth's warming has had harmful effects	6 Summary	Unlike the rest of the colonial powers
	on the environment.	Summary	Unlike the rest of the colonial powers, America expanded peacefully.
9			America expanded peacefully.
Key words	retirement age / greater demand / hospital	7	
Key words	care / assisted-living centers / nursing	Summary	Computer technology has been
	homes		progressing very rapidly.
Summary	The aging of America will require more		
	health services for the elderly.	8	
	,	Summary	Industrialization has given women the
10			power to be independent, thereby
Key words	computers / tasks easier and quicker /		increasing divorce rates.
	social interaction less personal		
Summary	Despite their benefits, computers have	9	
	had a depersonalizing effect.	Summary	Pop culture is making society more
			accustomed to sex and violence.
11		10	
Key words	rising tuition costs / cost of living /	10 Summary	Pollution is forcing cities to expand their
	potential students / away from college	Summary	Pollution is forcing cities to expand their mass transit systems.
	campuses		mass transit systems.
Summary	Many people give up on going to college	11	
	for financial reasons.	Summary	Video games and computers are causing
10			today's children to be in bad shape and
12			are often making them obese.
Key words	space program / increased man's		
	knowledge of Earth / meteorology,	12	
	cartography, geology, and communications	Summary	Excessive commercial fishing may harm
252	Communications		the oceans' ecosystems.
232			

13

Summary The zebra mussel threatens the survival of local species of fish and interferes with

city water supplies in North America.

14

Summary

Financial aid and higher incomes have made college increasingly affordable to common people.

15 Summary

Email and instant messaging are prompting people to invent new, short words

Actual Test 01

Task 1 (Integrated Writing)

Reading

Lecture

Narrator Listen to part of a lecture on the topic you just read about.

W: As we've seen, evolution explains how animals got the way they are. But, uh, scientists don't always agree on why particular traits have evolved. Hmm... One example is our striped friend, the zebra. We still don't know for sure what purpose the stripes serve, and, you know, the usual theories have holes in them as big as the savannahs where the zebras live.

Okay, ready for the theories? One is that the stripes make the zebra into an optical illusion, so that an attacker—let's say a lion—thinks he's much closer than he really is. But that idea's no good because a lion doesn't catch a zebra by leaping at it, you know. It chases the zebra and captures it when it gets tired.

Um, some "experts" say that predators are confused when the zebra is in a large herd because the pattern of stripes makes it hard to make out an individual zebra to attack. Okay? But predators can adapt over time. Hmm... So they've learned how to pick out a particular member of a herd.

Probably the most popular explanation is that the stripes are the zebra's camouflage outfit, which makes them disappear in the tall grass. Hah! If these "experts" would spend some time actually watching zebras in the

wild, they'd see that zebras don't try to hide. What they do is, uh, they expose themselves on the open plains so that predators can't sneak up on them.

You got that? So the only thing we know for sure is that whatever markings an animal has today got there because they gave the animal some kind of, uh, survival advantage. Hmm... Another example is the hump on a camel, okay?

Sample Answer

The lecturer disagrees with the passage's premise that the stripes, in various ways, serve the purpose of protecting zebras from their predators.

First, she refutes the theory that the stripes create an optical illusion that causes a predator to leap at the zebra when it is too far away. She points out that a zebra's predator, often a lion, does not attack by leaping but by chasing it down on the open plains.

Second, she says that predators are adept at singling out a zebra from its herd because they have adapted to the patterns of stripes. Thus, she disagrees that the purpose of the stripes is to cause a particular zebra to blend in with the herd.

Finally, the lecturer explains why even the most popular theory—that the stripes serve as camouflage—is negated by real-world observation. She notes that this theory assumes that zebras attempt to hide in the tall grasses. In fact, she reports, zebras prefer to expose themselves on open plains so that they can detect the approach of any predator.

Task 2 (Independent Writing)

Sample Answer

Learning is a lifetime pursuit. While a college program in teaching gives prospective teachers the credentials to teach, it does not give them everything they need to know about their subject area. The conscientious teacher will keep abreast of developments as they occur. But a formalized, every-five-year process will ensure that all teachers know what they should know and that their students will learn what they should be learning.

This refresher requirement is especially important in science subjects. More than languages, social studies, or math, science is constantly being reinvented, as new phenomena are discovered and new explanations are found. For example, until the late 1990s, astronomers believed

the universe was slowing down as it expanded. But then they discovered that the expansion is actually speeding up, suggesting the presence of a new force called dark energy. Also, every year brings new data on global warming, evolution, and biology. A periodic return to the classroom will keep science teachers up to date.

Almost every week, the newspapers report new studies about the harmful effects of certain foods or behavior. For example, the recommended food pyramid recently changed. A health teacher needs to be aware of the change in order to provide his/her students with the latest nutrition guidelines. Also, information about AIDS prevention and sexually transmitted diseases is continually being revised.

Even with seemingly unchanging fields like writing, math, and languages, the methods of teaching are constantly being questioned and improved. Over the last 50 years, math teaching has gone from one extreme—repetition and memorization—to another—"new math"—and back again. Language teaching has been revolutionized as more studies are done that refute prior assumptions about how students learn a language.

In sum, if students are to receive the most current information, which they must if they want to compete and succeed in their jobs and lives, their teachers must be expected to acquire the latest and best knowledge in their chosen field.

Actual Test 02

Task 1 (Integrated Writing)

Reading

Lecture

Narrator Now listen to part of a lecture on the topic you just read about.

M: Okay, class. Listen up. We've seen that laws limiting menhaden fishing can have some harmful effects. But, like most social forces, you know, restricting menhaden harvests can have good effects, too. Hmm... In fact, I'm convinced that such restrictions are the best way to avoid menhaden extinction.

First, it's true that decreasing the number of striped bass means that menhaden will have fewer predators to worry about. But, um, fewer striped bass also can upset the ecological balance of the local area. Remember that striped bass are part of the food chain. And, uh, bigger fish depend on them, so, if they decline in numbers, the food chain will be interrupted, and some species will not get the nutrients they need. So I don't think that limiting striped bass in order to save the menhaden is worth the side-effects.

Second, any harm to local economies, such as job losses, will be temporary and short-lived. That's because when harvesting is reduced for a period of time, you know, the population of the species has time to increase. And, uh, soon there will be plenty of fish ready to be caught. And don't forget that people are also adaptable, okay? We've seen that when one way to make a living is taken away, people gravitate to something else, or they can move to another place that is not, say, fishing-dependent.

Third, I, uh, doubt that limiting menhaden fishing will disrupt the food chain. Nature is amazing. When one source of nutrition disappears, you know, others tend to take its place. Hmm... So striped bass will feed on other fish instead of menhaden and even on the algae that used to be eaten by the menhaden. As a result, the striped bass will grow large enough to be snacks for those above them in the food chain.

Sample Answer

The lecturer believes that the reading focuses only on the bad effects of restrictions on menhaden fishing and ignores the possible beneficial effects. First, he disagrees with the passage's proposal to reduce the population of striped bass as a way to reduce the menhaden's predators. He cautions that such a measure would have a harmful impact on the ecological balance of nature in the area, as it would remove an important link in the food chain.

Second, as opposed to the reading, the lecturer predicts that any economic harm from restricted menhaden harvesting will be temporary since the stock will quickly return to normal levels during the period of regulation. And some people who depended on the menhaden industry can move on to other kinds of work.

Finally, the lecturer doubts that the food chain will be disrupted. An increase in the numbers of menhaden may mean that there will be no algae left for some menhaden, but he says that nature allows adaptations and that menhaden and others in the food chain will alter their eating habits and thrive just as well as before.

Task 2 (Independent Writing)

Sample Answer

I disagree that speaking skills are more important than writing skills. I think writing has become more important due to recent technological and social changes.

My first reason is personal. I write well but do not speak well. I stumble and stutter when forced to express myself orally, but I can confidently put words on paper and express myself in what I think is concise and interesting prose. For that reason, I am attracted to classes where my grades depend on writing good papers and essays on tests. So I probably will choose a career that demands effective writing.

The second reason is a cultural one. Writing ability has declined in the computer age, as students can communicate with the new language of text messaging and e-mail. Sentences no longer need to be complete, and words no longer need to be spelled correctly. Abbreviations and emoticons are twenty-first century substitutes for correct spelling and word choice. But

once the student enters the job market, he may be unprepared to meet his boss's expectations that he write an effective letter or report. And there will always be occupations for which writing is critical, such as those of lawyer or teacher.

Even with careers that place a premium on speaking, writing is important. A salesman can have some success if he is verbally adept, but business contacts more and more are made electronically—whether by fax, e-mail, or text messaging. So a successful businessperson or professional must be able to write clearly if he is to win new clients or achieve his goals. And a lawyer who can orally persuade a jury that his client is innocent still must be able to write briefs capable of convincing an appellate court that the trial court made a legal error.

Everyone must be able to express ideas and convey information in order to succeed, both at work and in life. In today's world, I think that writing is the most effective way to do that.

How to Master Skills for the TOEFL® iBT Writing Basic

Arthur H. Milch - Denise McCormack - E2K

SÁCH TÁI BẢN

Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản

Giám đốc - Tổng Biên tập Đinh Thị Thanh Thủy

Chiu trách nhiệm nội dung

Phó Giám đốc - Phó Tổng Biên tập Nguyễn Tư Tường Minh

Biên tập

Nguyễn Hoài Nam

Trình bày sách

Công ty Nhân Trí Việt

Sửa bản in

Hữu Lộc

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN TỔNG HỢP THÀNH PHỐ HỒ CHÍ MINH

62 Nguyễn Thị Minh Khai - Q.1 - TP.HCM

☎ 38225340 − 38296764 − 38247225 Fax: 38222726

E-mail: tonghop@nxbhcm.com.vn Sách online: www.nxbhcm.com.vn

Ebook: www.sachweb.vn

Thực hiện liên kết:

Công ty TNHH Nhân Trí Việt

83⁸ Trần Đình Xu, P. Nguyễn Cư Trinh, Quận 1 Thành phố Hồ Chí Minh

In 500 cuốn khổ 20 × 28cm tại Công ty TNHH MTV ITAXA – 126 Nguyễn Thị Minh Khai Quận 3 – TP. Hồ Chí Minh. XNĐKXB số: 3279-2017/CXBIPH/09-248/THTPHCM ngày 28-9-2017. QĐXB số: 1204/QĐ-THTPHCM-2017 ngày 3-10-2017. ISBN: 978-604-58-6979-6. In xong và nộp lưu chiếu tháng 1-2018.